# DECADES OF EPISTLES OF WARRE

BY

FRANCIS MARKHAM.



LONDON,

Printed by Augustine Matthewes. Anno 1.6 2 2.

ROCHES Prince I Developed to the Prince I WY CHANGE TO SEE

# TO THE PRINCE

beere bewerankt their Names, set dauetleffe in their

bearts wel continually be a noble emulation who find ap-

Hen I consider (Greatest of Princes and my most gracious Prince) that all men which passe their dayes in this

World, with loofe and untyed Endes, neither hinding the to the Kings Service, their Countries Profit, nor their owne particular advancement) doe but wander and goe aftray like weary Transllers loft on some wilde and untrast wildernes, and cannot be said to sourney but to Toyle. And when

I see that an idle man is nothing else but the Deuils cushion, on which wickednes sits, whilest Sloath sleepes on his bosome, I could not then chuse but rouze up my

on his bosome, I cout a not then chuse but rouze up my spirits to undertake some labour, which might both deliner me from this errour, and (by calling backe the ac-

me in the present which with a constant faithfulnes desires to doe your Hignesse and my Countrey service.

Warre (gracious Sir) hath been ever my Mistresse, and though I could not get so neere her as I wisht, yet I have ever loved her as I ought: and though I have not been worthy to participate with her Glory, yet she hath been pleased todaigne me her bloody favours, and to sixe them so sure, that (whilst I am) the Scarres will never part from my hody. Hence it comes, that I bring this

A

Cacri-

#### THE EPISTLE

Sacrifice to her Altar, and only defire I may offer it up before your Goodnes, making you (as you are) the great Captaine of this bonourable Band, which how focuer I beere baue rankt their Names, yet doubtlesse in their bearts wil continually be a noble emulation who shall approch you nearest in the feruencie of true Loue, or the beight of a worthie Admiration. The Subject (though peraduenture darkned by my blunt Language) is worthy your most Princely attention: for Warre is onely proper to Princes, fince they (and none but they) may (un der God) defend their owne by the Sword, relieve their oppressed neighbours with the Sword, cut downe all tray terous and rebellious weeds under the Sword: and lastly, acquire great Conquests, & enioy true Fame through the Sword: for indeed but they for themselves, and others by their Authoritie, none elfe may draw the Sword.

He is true (mightie Sir) that your thrice worthy Father my dread Soueraigne hath sheathed his Sword, and by his sacred Wisedome saued the blood of many (hristians, all his levels (as by his owne vnimitable pen is protested) are at true Pietie, and God which is hest pleased with Peace, hath crownd his daies with such Peace, that Warre could not bring any of his progenitors the midway to his glory: his Peace and Patience (in the dayes of our admired Elizabeth) made his passage smooth coeffee to his lawfull Inheritance, or he entred the Throne with such an vniversall loy, and applause of his people, that the admiring French cried out in amazement, What without a Blow, O wonder! But this was God, and by him hath his Maiestie shut up every backe

dore

dore that could let in Division: yet how long this Peace shall continue God in his wisdome (not man) is able to reckon. I know though Licurgus made his Laws constat by VVar, yet Numa made his more happy by Peace though the first may indure yet the later shalle more eternall, and both of necessitie must still todge neere to remembrance. It was Ioseph's counsel, In plentie to prouide for dearth, and in peaceable times to secure Armes is no needles consideration. It is not doubted but a wife Prince may gouern the worlde with an Olive Branch (for so did the Romans) yet when the sword comes, the bough must yeld; for the leafe can but perswade, tis the Steele which must enforce, and where both are United, there ever is Tranquility most faire of most flourishing; Your Highnes is an Heire of many kingdoms, and may iustly baue occasion to command many swords, either to recouer your right in forain parts, or relieue your frieds in other parts; and though we intoy the sweetnesse of Peace, and pray continually for the preservation of the same peace, yet must not Warre bemade altogether a stranger: but as it is said of Death, To prepare for it, giues no approach vnto it: so to prepare & beready at all times for war, is no frost that can nip the pleasant blossoms of peace, for both are the handmaids of Kings, the one beares his Commandements, the other his Loue, the one makes him powerfull amongst his neighbors, the other rich amongst his owne people: So that taking the true poize of this Subiect, to whom can f better offer this Tribute, then to your gracious selfe (not as an addition to your knowledge (farre be such arrogance) but as an Aduocate to plead my dutie) in who all perfections

#### THE EPISTLE, OC.

flow to fo entire an excellence, that Art and Nature bane left in themselves no power to promise any thing beyond you: Be therefore (Gracious Sir) pleased to protest this poore endeanour of your plaine Souldier, and how ener it comes (like Truth) naked into the world, yet let it finde shelter in the Shadow of your Royall Countenance; First in respect you are the vndoubted Heire of my dread King, and so fyour vaf-Sall owe you all my Goodnes; next, in regard Warre is my subject, whose Triumphs & hope shall evermore attend you; and lasty, for your owne deare vertues sake which is the Foode, Life and Soule of enery Souldier. To this and only this great Senate of your divine perfections f humbly submit my Labours, beseeching the God of Heaven and Earth to blesse your Highnesse with all true and perfect happines to the Glory of his greate name, the good of his Church, and the unspeakeable Comfort of the King, and us that are his People.

thereon by their under Earth, To prepare for it,

Euer vowed to your Highnes in all durifull service.

Sno approach vintoir:

Winder Countries has bounded to the mi

exestive but are regular

FRANCIS MARKHAM.



HE PRIFACE

# (being men of fuch hoble worth and antiquitie) how ener mine errour

Orkes of this Nature (indifferent Sir what ener you bee) as they are not without many difficulties, fo they feldome or never palle without many differing Cenfures, and those alwayes led according to the Opinions of fuch as governe them; fome being full of mercifull Interpretation, loine of fcomefull Pittie, and fome of Seneritie, which it is no Init-

made my selfe liable vnto them by this Publication, blame mee not if feeke to reduce them to their noblest and best Countenances by my

just and vofained excuses

It is true that I never had a daring to thinke there was an absolute perfection in any of my labours; for I knew mine owne Strength, and the many Precipices, which lay before mee; into fome of which I must necessarily fall, though not through the rudenesse of tenerance, yet for some especiall ends to which I had tyed my selfe almost by a Legall condition: and therefore having no refuge but this PREFACE, let mee be held exculable, if I make it yeeld Reafons for fuch efcapes, as those which are not familiar with my Bosome, may take for Wistakings.

And of these the first which I thinke will bee called vinto memory, is fome Milplacings or Errours in my Raunge, as namely, the omission of that Noble and Vertuous Lady, the Lady Diffenser, who although thee may truely challenge the first place in this Roll of Nobilitie, and that both her owne Goodnesse, and her Sonnes most noble parts, together with a strong Bond of Blood by which I am bound, ties mee father to hunt and finde out any thing that might adde to their Greatnesse, then lose or let passe the least tittle belonging to their true Honour; yet mas much as the tendernesse of her sext and the vasit proportions which are betwirt her and a Subject of this barsh, rough, and vapillalant nature, tels me how unproper such applications have ener beene held both in all times past, and in these which are now present amongs vs, I could not but imagine such an omission rather an ornament to Order, then an abatement of any due which is proper to vettue. In visus 101) with I Next this, the Raunging of the Earle of CASTEL HAVEN, the

Viscounts

#### THE PREFACE.

Viscounts of COLCHESTER and ROCHFORD, as also the two noble Heires of WORCESTER and SVFFOLKE, may draw on fome curious exception, because I have rankt them but as Barons, and as they fir in Parliament, whereas their places contains an higher estimation. To these exceptions I have Appologiz d in the Process of their Epiftles, but for a further fatisfaction: true it is, that these Epistles (though but now published) yet were written long before, and at such time as the Range was proper (to most of them) without any serious exception. Besides, I must confesse I haue written another Semi Centurie of Epistles apperraining onely to Honour, which I confecrate to the greater Nobilitie, and in them already have ranged the Greates; therefore to have omitted thefe (being men of fuch noble worth and antiquitie) how ever mine errour now be pardonable, it had then beene past excuse. Hence it is, I have rather made choice to bee too bold with fome, then to neglect others, and howfoeuer in fome places I may bee thought to skip or take too large strides, leaping ouer some, to attaine others, yet it is neither partialitie nor fingularity in affection; but rather a compeld Method which I must purfue out of the dutie I owe to the greatnesse of Place and Verse. Befides, having confined my felfe to the true proportion of Decads & those Decads iumping into a just Semi-Centurie of Epistics whose number is fiftie two and no more, I must either breake the whole frame of mine intended Building, or else leaue some names to an after-remembrance, at which if any repine, faying mine owne libertie might have bestowed on mee a limit of more largenesse: to that I must ingeniously confesse, that howfoeuer I might have affumed more labour, yet I could have hardly (in this subject) found out more fit matter: for having made my Mounture as high as the Generall, it was not in me to feeke to afcend aboue it, least stepping but one haires breadth beyond my knowledge, I might so haue fallen backe with difgrace, and ruin'd my whole labour.

Some peraduenture (yet but the ignorant) may condemne, or at least question why I elected this manner of writing in Epiftles, rather then other Formes, which are now more frequent amongst vs, to which I answere, That I tooke this way for the most ancient, best, and noblest President: and having in myselfe a freedome of choyce, I held that Ambition, an honest and praise-worthy Defire, which conducted mee to follow those Steps which so many renowned and famous men have not onely purfued, but also left vnto the world as a rule worthy our Imitation: for thus in Epistles write many of the excellentest Phylosophers, as Tullie, Seneca, and a world of others: Thus writ the best Poets, as Ouid, Horace, Martiall, and the like: thus have Kings written, as Dienysius: thus have Emperours written as Aurelius: thus have Popes written, thus have Bishops; nay, thus have the facted Fathers of the Church written: and thus have writ the most blessed

Lastly, (for enery small Moate appeares a Beame to the eye of Curiofitie) some may except against some little litterall, and indeed no Vicconn

#### THE PREFACE.

faults escaped in the Printing: to which I can but say, that if our Language (which questionlesse is now as perfect, as significant, and as glorious as any other) stood vpon its owne ground-worke without the Bases of other Dialetts, then there might bee one ready, certaine, and high way in which to walke and finde out true Orthographie, but the French will challenge multiplication of Letters, the Italian gloriousnesse in sound, the Dutch a filling of the mouth, the Latine his puritie, and the Greeke his mysterie: so that indeed to satisfie all, is more then many mens labours; and I must begge, if any small escapes happen to encounter with your eye-sight, let a fauourable mercy cure it, and I shall not onely be thankfull, but praise a nature which is accompanied with so honest a patience.

and I shall not onely be thankfull, b	out praise a nature which is accompa-
nied with fo honesta patience.	Les be Necessay of Warre.
. Scone marky. The contract the second	Theolory of a Sculver.
Lieurement of the Ordnance. 117	The Honour of a Souidier.
A THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PARTY OF THE PART	The Vertues of a Souldier
- Company of the Comp	The Reinard du Muhier 7
THE FOYETH DECAD.	Velemarius.
and the same of th	Learning of Southers. 20
N. K. P. Bor Maller	Arming of Shot Some of
TAT OWNERS - 181 - 181 - 181	Continue Piles
Paper of Property	1 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Camine of Foole	HADEL TEXT TO A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PA
Captaint of Horfe	Tar School Decan.
Seeleant maior of a Regiment 14	[20] [1] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2
Licentemant Colonell of Practe 145	He out of a souther and Di-
Lieutenant Colonell of Harles 140	Tribution.
Louis Contos of the Ester " " 12	Central ells.
Countered Warre.	Rounders
the formation of the land	Steartes and Harbingers
o contracted annual also, ten to	Dunemes and Phiphes.
THE FIRST DREAD.	Ampelador.
retained base, and property	corporalls.
Colonell of Paster Links in	ericants.
Colordrof Horle	Stantenant.
Seriednie Maior Concrally	2200
Transfer and the second	In the second second second
Treatment defection of reside.	ALL ME COLOR OF THE STREET
Traduction	THE TAIL CALL
Master of the Ordinance	Theory of Countries
College Course of Course o	The Composition of the Control of th
Central Vision III	Terret State of the State of the State of
Statement of the second statement	Vaggar mafter. 93.
	17.2年中的中华人民共和国国际的
MARCHARION CHOLDING STRAIGHT	。 12年,第二日本和政策。在第二日的编辑。在20日的经验

# ON CONTROL OF CONTROL

THE PREFIGE.

# A Table conteining all the principall heads and Arguments handled in this Booke.

at indeed to finfine all, is more	and the breeke his mytheric : fireh
THE FIRST DECAD.	Porrage-master. 2000 your 1097
n, let a fauourable mercy cinent,	Victuall-neaster! 101100110 01 401
He motiues to this Worke, 1	Pronost-Marsball. 105
I The Necessity of Warre.	Indge Marfhall and of drive 189
The glory of a Souldier.	Scont-master. 113
The Honour of a Souldier. 13.	Lieutenant of the Ordnance. 117
The Vertues of a Souldier. 17	
The Reward due to Souldiers 21	
Voluntaries. 25	THE FOURTH DECAD.
Leauying of Souldiers. 29	
Arming of Shot. 33	NA Vster-Master : 121
Arming Pikes. 37	IVI Quarter-master. 125
Commence of the Commence of th	Captaine of Pioners. 129
	Captaine of Foote: 133
THE SECOND DECAD.	Captaine of Horse. 137
THE SECOND DECAD.	Serieant-major of a Regiment 141
THe Oath of a Soulder and Di-	Lieutenant Colonell of Foote. 145
	Lieutenant Colonell of Horse. 149
The state of the s	Foure Corporals of the Field. 153
Rounders. 45	Counsellof Warre. 157
Clamber and Hantiman	
D	
Lanspesados. 57	T. F. D.
C	THE FIFTH DECAD.
	Colonell of Foote. 161
P-G-	
Times and the second se	
Ligienani. 77	0-111 0 - 11
	2. 17 2 新元公司中央公司 12 20 第二十四年 5 20 5 3 2 3 4 4 10 2 3 4 4 10 2 3 4 4 10 2 3 4 4 10 2 3 4 4 10 2 3 4
T - T - D	Lieutenant Generall of Horse. 177
THE THIRD DECAD.	Treasurer. 181
OFficers of Canallerie. 81	Master of the Ordinance 185
1 N-0-0 -	Alarshall. 189
Town.l. et	Lieutenant Generall. 193
Wagness - A.	Generall. 197
rraggon-majter. 93	An addition



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND NOVV FIRST BARON

EDVVARD NEVIL Lord and object of the control of the

Hen (my good Lord) I intended this worke, and had fixt with my felfe a refolution to range in this Battalion, the noble Troupe of all our furui-uing English Barons, in such fort as I had former-ly scene in some other Presidents; Mee thought the leading of the Right hand File did properly poynt at your Lordship, both in respect the Subiect is much too rough and unpleasant for the well

tuned eares of fearefull and modest Ladies, as also that the clangor and shrill noise of the trumpet and drumme, are rather full of affright then pleasure, & do sooner astonish then delight the tender sofres of a sweet Ladie: fo that vnder your Lordships name I must couer both your kinfwoman and your owne greatuesse; and to you in this pistle give a briefe account of those especial Moriues which have stirred nie vp to vndertake and performethis labour, in fuch fort as it is heere (though bluntly and plainly) yet with all truth and care faithfully effected.

I must confesse, I neither expect nor wish for greater priviledge then others have found which have runne before me in Tracks of the like nature, but ever stand ready to receive the Battery of Censure and Oplnion, onely from the daring ignorant, pray heartily for fome helpe and affistance; for they never hold faire quarter, but still carrie poyson in their weapons, whereas Judgement and Learning are evernoble and like Achilles, if they hurt yet cure againe in the fame inflant. Me thinks I heare one question how a man valcarned, and having spent so long a time in the warres, could find leafure to arme himselfe for others instruction, or how where few or no Bookes are, yet Bookes frould thus bee daily created; another objects, how I (having attained no greater place than the Title of private Captaine) can finde out Rules by which to direct

rect and gouerne more publique and powerfull Officers, and the last (though not the least in the bundle of Envie) demands how I dare professe this Trade of making Booke-Souldiors, as if the Arte of Warre were not better attain'd by Practife than Contemplation; to all which I must returne this one ioynt and entire answere; first, it is not vnknown to those which best know me, that I was euer a louer of the Muses, and as I spent my Summer Progresse in the warres, so I consumed my Winters quiet in the wholsome delights of forraine Accademies; and if I'be any way short in Scholler-like perfection, questionlesse the defect proceeds much rather from mine ownedulnesse, than defire to rest at that point which might in some fort expresse me a Scholler. Thirtie and odde yeares I haue spent abroad in these imployments; and sure the Prentiship is so sufficient, that a very dull Mechannick might in that space have writ himselfe Master of his occupation, and the greatest trewant (much fooner a willing mind) might without wonder in that time attaine to the highest degree in the grauest Studie: and questionlesse this I must say for the Warres, that even in Garisons and Campes, I have profited more by conference with noble Spirits, than by any privat Meditation, though pen'd with the greatest luster: so that ioyning together Practise and Observation, had I been duller then Malice could wish me, yet I could not but have made much vie of my deservings, and finding it Honestum, Vtile, Delectabile, how could mine Admiration chuse but still search to find out the perfection? For this Ne Sutor vitra, I have icene io many vndertakings (of men which neuer faw the Warres) passe with that applause and reuerence, that I imagined, although my Suruey was neuer so little, yet I might more freely labour in this worke, and make mine experience of greater force, both for mine owne knowledge, and others fatilfaction. Againe, howfocuer my Fortune hath staid in the middle way or halfe path to Greatnes, yet hath both my Blood and it made me worthy to commerce and confer with great persons, and to observe the greatest Actions: fo that marrying to mine owne Readings the manage of their approued wisdomes, I could not be so weakly fortified, as to make doubt of mine owne strength, or to suppose it is not able to beare me a much higher pitch than at this time mine Ambition will give me leave to presume. Lastly, for the title of a Booke-Souldier (than which there is not a more distastfull found to the eare of a military Professour) I confesse a meere Phormio is vnfit to tutor Hanibal, and a meere Aiax (which hath nothing but his anger) is lesse fit then Vlisses to weare Achilles armour; but there must euer bee such a persit mixture in the composition which is made betweene them, that the Souldier must neuer be without one cup of the Muses Nepenthe, nor the Scholler so vnnimble, but that at any command he may be able to dance a Lauolta to the tune of the Cannon, Cafar must be able to write his Commentaries, and Tullie know how to put on his Armor when Rome is ready to be fired.

That the Subject it selfe must lie at the mercy of Censure, the very

Times doe allow it: for Peace hath made up her gat land with fuch fweet

Flowers

Flowers, that the bitternes of Lawrell is not to bee difgested, and every one can fay to his companion, Take downe your harps againe, and hang vp your Armes on the willowes : breake no fleeps with your drums, nor let the barbed Steed either spurne the earth, or chide the bit which restraines him: let Souldiers now turne Tradefinen; for Minerua hath cast away her lance, & the Booke of the seuen Arts is become both her playmate and pillow. Is not Janus temple now closed, and yet shall Warre speake loud to affright vs. hath not this land been harrowed many yeres with Romans, Saxons, Danes and Normans? have not our selves within our felucs in the Barons wars, and in the mightie divisions of Yorke and Lancanster spent blood enough ? hath not the injuries of France, the revenge of Spaine, and the falshood of Ireland opened wounds enough, but that now when God hath feat vs a peaceable Prince, a hopefull Islue, happie Vnion, and a generall calmenesse with all that dwell farre or neere about vs. shall we now fing of warre, or let the found of the drumme thunder amazement amongst vs? O no tis a labour needlesse, and a service thankleffe. Well, all this I confesse, and more then this will solemnly affirme, that Peace is the sweetest tune which ever warbled in a Christians care, euen facred from heauen : for it is faid, I will leave my Peace with you; most defired of good men, and fuch a bleffing to vs that enioy it, as fearthing amongst all the Treasures both of heaven and earth, none is found to mankind more deare or precious; forhat we are infinitly bound to praise God, and pray for the King, by whose mercy and wisedome wee haue found fo gracious a possession.

But because Peace is to be defired, shall Warre bee veterly neglected; because we enjoy the sweet taste of Tranquilitie, shall we cast away the wholesome bitternesse of Warre, or because the Summer quarter hangs vponvs, shall we thinke Winter will rot on the Skie, and stand in need of no prouision, God forbid: the world and her proiects tels vs the contrary, nay, the Sauiour of the world hath prophelied to the contrary, affirming that At the end of the world there shall bee warres and rumours of warres, and therefore howfoeuer weare now bleft with an heauenly poffession of Peace, yet we are but Tenants at will, and these secure times best fit martiall meditations. Warre is the teeming mother, and doth in as much abundance bring foorth Souldiers, as Peace doth decay them; and questionlesse since both are alike incertaine to our apprehensions, it is needfull we be equally prouided for eithers entertainment, and to vnderstand that as Pietie, Pouertie, Humilitie, Loue and Vnitie breed Peace, so from her may descend Plentie, Pride, Contempt and Discord, the foster children of Warre and Distemper: for there must ever be vicissitudes and changes amongst men which are mortall: so that I conclude, In these quiet times there cannot be a more necessary watch-word than Arma virumq; cano, nor in the heat of furie a Iweeter falutation than Pax vobis: the motto of life is Memento mori, the found of death, Arise to Indgement : He that will live, must learne how to die; and he that will die, must learne how to live eternally. These considerations have

fet an edge on my defires, and so fortified my Resolution, that it is not able to finke vnder any other perswasion, or if it would, yet are there many other inducements and motiues, which would ftill keepe life in my first opinion, as my dutie to God, my service to my Prince and Countrey, and mine endeared affection to my privat friends and companions. to all which as I am bound by feuerall engagements; fo to them all I must give feuerall accounts of the feuerall rights, their merits and worthes may truly challenge from me. God himselfe hath professed an exacting the account of Talents, and that strictly; My Prince (by whose sacred prouidence we enioy our tranquilitie, euery man resting vader his owne Vine in safetie, and feeding on his Fig-tree with delight and pleasure) will expect that we (in our lower callings) shew both obedience and will to preserve the Peace his wisdome hath planted; my Countrey from her Natiues cannot demand a leffe rent than their endeauors; and my friends to whom I am bound for civill commercement, must either taste the benefit of my wel-taken paines, or hold me ingratefull. These are the motiues which have fixt me to this labour, and hence I have assumed this Method of writing these short Essayes or Epistles, being a forme both exact and ancient, found out by the grauest Fathers, followed by the rarest Orators, allowed by all Moderne Writers, and left as a President vnto vs by the best Authours: So that being clensed both from Innouation and oftentation, having in it a generall profit, and a particular end to goodnesse, being all mens ayme, all mens aduancement; I doubt

not but it will appeare faire to your Lordship and to your noble Ranke, having this Maxime still to keepe my hope in safetie, that Bonum est

abound the Commerce of the Com

nation of New Cych we are but the service of the companies and delined from the method and delined in

as reach abundance bring root the leave, as a case dother scar should and question for the first between the content of the first between the first between the first between the first between the content of the first between the first be

cinquees and hanges and one of incomplich are mortall : to that I

close the content is a correct to the antice in collary to the intention of the content in the c

lofter dulk on of Wire and Difference:

derly hay to saviour blind, or in the property of the control of t

OT de la company provide de la coders concuminate, and



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND GENEROVS MERVIN

TOVCHET Lord Audley now Earle of

## The Argument.

#### The necessitie of Warre.

Goe not about (my Lord) in this Epistle, either to awake your courage, or instruct your knowledge, but rather to recount vnto you those Rules and Arguments, to which both your owne and your Ancestors actions may give most true and lively examples: Therefore howsoever I shall be forced like the Dogs on the bankes of Nylus to feed running and but catch heere and there at these dangerous

waters, yet if your Lordship shall be pleased to take them to a constant consideration, I doubt not but they shall deliuer you matter worthy both of your delight and studie.

It is true, that in my former Epistle I have sleightly pointed at the neceffary care which belongs to this military Art, even in the quietest and most fecured times. It behoues me now to shew the necessitie both of the Art and thing it felfe not only at other times, but all times, for it is a profession Sine qua non, and is as old as the world: for as Perfection entred, Flattery followed, and Force draue both out of that bleffed habitation. When the world was so poore, that it had but three men only, yet one of them then flew his brother, and as the world grew riper, so force increafed, and (as some of the first Rabbins affirme) ambitious Lamech slew his grandfire Gain with an arrow, which was ever accounted a military weapon : and although this proue not a lawfull necessitie, yet it infers that when the fword is in the hand of a wicked polleflor, then violence and outrage follow and pursue one another, till noble Warre, and his best friend Fortitude either restraine their furie, or punish their trespasse: for this is warre needfull, and hence it comes that the ruling Sword ought euer to be swayd by sustice arme, for it is the power of the Law which doth doth reason to all men, and the measure of Right which shares out things by a iust and equall proportion. I confesse it were a note of excellent modestie, if (as Tulie perswaded) the Sword would give place to the Gowne, and it might well be assumed, as greater Hostes (in their owne houses) give precedency to meaner Guests, or as we say of doating parents, that they are content to be made Fooles by the wit of their children. But to ascribe it as a due or right, is not right: for the Gowne can but meditate and say, In Instice this ought to bee done, when the Sword

faith, For Iuftice fake this is done.

It is not to be argued but a meere Scholler deserues much better then a meere Souldier, in as much as the head is a wealthier member than the Arme, but the compounded man which confisteth of equall and excellent parts, is farre aboue them both; for hee fees and doth, knowes and can execute; An head armelesse, or an Arme headlesse, makes but vp a lame Commander; Isadas rashnesse finds shame instead of Laurell. and Xerxes Cowardisc (though it know how to cloath the Ocean with Shippes) runnes from the Persians with reproach and dishonor; It is true that the Orators in Rome (by the name of Senators) did long time fway that Infinite Empire, giving Lawes to Peace, and Rules to Warre, Kings gouern'd as they commanded, and Generalls fought as they directed. But when Cafar returned to Rome, and was adorned both with knowledg and action, who then durft withstand him? nay though he affected the Diadem, (an ambition of all others most hatefull to their natures) yet who but obeyed him? did Brutus? did Cassius? did Tullie? did Cato? did any in the large Beadrole of his fatall Conspirators, by eloquence reclaime him? no, twas with Ponyards, force euermore must master force, and it is the violent stroke of one nayle which euermore must drive out the other, Cafar was a Cedar, not a Willow, he that would bring him downe must lay the Axe to his roote, not bend his toppe with an Engine; It is certaine the Romans vs'd all the art of practife, all secresie in Treason, and all the shame in Libells; they had cunning enough to let the people know Cafars faults and their owne loffes, they could put Freedome in his best Garments, and make Profit appeare as gloryous as an Angell, yet all was but as dust scattered in the winde, and t'was only the Stabbe, and nothing but it alone that prevailed, To descend nearer to our owne familiar knowledge, what Senator is there which euer lived, or what Orator that euer pleaded, who giving Sentence on a delinquent, could by force of his eloquence perswade the wretch to runne himselfe to the Gallowes, put on the noose and leape from the Ladder with Dulce quia sponte, no; life is a dearer companion to mans nature, and when that is forfeit, the Sherife (which is his countries Souldior) must with his armed Band, compell him to the bloody Altar: and as in this, so in all cases what soener, that are allied to Compulsion, whether it be the execution of writs, obedience to lawes, the setling of Estates and Manners; where the conscience will not be perswaded, there the Sword must enforce and vse his commandement;

Should

Should forraine enemies vpon falle suggested Titles inuad vs, our swords (vnder God) must defend vs. should our Soueraignes loose any part of their lawfull Rights, our Swords are bound to regaine them: should Traytors like Hydras, increase by killing, yet must the Sword suppresse them: should Rebells spring like the growth of the Dragons teeth, yet must the Sword consume them: and should our Neighbours or allies be oppress, or true religion suppress, yet must our Swords maintaine them: so that we may conclude in all cases what socuer, whether Fas or Nefas, either to strengthen suffice, or weaken iniury, to guard Vertue, or to combate Vice: yet there is a strong necessity why the Sword should still be required.

Let vs therefore give the Sword his due, and fay it is the eldest sonne of Honor, and let vs give that Royall Commander his descrued admiration, who though he have sheathed his owne, and almost all the Swords in Christendome, yet still stands fortified with so powerfull a preparation; that with them of Colen, the whole world may cry out, it is a madnes to thinke to resist a Prince so good, so wise, and so fortunate; War never had so many Schooles in the time of Troubles, as his Peace hath Academies to expresse the depth of Martiall discipline; every man now is more then a master in that brave Art, and Infants and Children as they are going to the schoole, can teach one another the vse of Weapon, March, Motion and Posture; so that strangers and forraine Nations have been heard to say, What will the English doe? if this continue, every

child like Hercules will be able to kill a Serpent in his Cradle.

But to proceed againe to the necessity of this designe, and to shew that Peace should be nothing eise but a foster Nurse vnto Souldiers, take a Survey of all Governments, whether Afirians, Perfians, Greekes or Romans, and we shall see that the Peace which they enjoyed at home, euer brought them forth those Souldiers which conquered abroad, for Warre is a deuouser, and only defires action, gives little leafure to meditation. Or to come a little nearer to our selues, let vs looke into the deeds of great Henry of France, and we shall see that though the Arsenal of Paris, had in five and twenty yeares seene foure mightie preparations yet was the last (which had injoyd the longest peace) the greatest and most transendent, being (as the Duke of Suylly reported) of that infinite space and largenesse, that the first day it was knit together, it seemed both to promise victory, and to sing the triumph, and the Terror was so great, that it stroke Ielousie into all the Kings friends, and feare among this enemies, for the Sword was drawne that might command; but no man knew to whome it would speake; power and valour, like thunder in the hand of Iupiter, was ready to fall in a twinckling, yet was no enemy feene, no peace broken, no warre proclaimed. This was the ability of a right peace, and by these helpefull provisions, he became both feared, beloved and admired: what stall we say of the peace in the Netherlands, but that every day it hath almost begot them a new army, and every night intic'd to the Seas an invincible Nauy, So that through proprovidence they are becommed so infinitely rich, both in the one and the other provision, that of them may be said, as was said of the Secular Triumphs, Come and see that which was never seene, and which no man lineing ever thought to see; a Nation that stood in need of all, now needed of all, and she that was taught of all, now teaching all others; this wonder hath peace wrought, and this profit have they gaind by exercising peace with a hurtlesse Matiall imployment; I could inferre as much for spaine, and say that her peace at home, bred her Souldiers to guard her gettings abroad, and that neither the vnwholesomnesse of the Equinoctiall line, nor the vninhabited Tropycks (so much feared of our forefathers) hath had so much power to consume men; as martiall discipline (in times of calmnesse) hath had shath had strength to revive them, and like the best Alchymie to make infinites grow from a single seede or projection.

To conclude then, (for the necessity of Warre was never accounted a Paradox) Armes and Soulderie are the Cronicles of Princes, the hazards of Battayles their Theaters, and the Iustice of their warlike cause their Honor, Persection and Tryumph; so that he which will live long in mens memory, must build this Pyramed whereon his name must stand, strong, vpright and even; he that will fill his Theater with shouts and plaudyties, must grapple with Lyons and Tygers, and he that will tryumph in persection, must have all the source vertues chaynd to him-

felfe, not to his Charyot, so shall his armes bee lawfull and needfull; and howsocuer the curious may account him a meane
Captaine, yet shall not the whole world produce the
Character of a better, a more needfull or a more renowned

of the contraction of the contraction of the contraction

Souldior.

Later of select from the control of the called

market and an inch know know and an analysis on

many plant to wind who decided would be the

both feated by lour denineds where diverse of the

Nether text state the edge day is head about began been and and and every and the first state of the Seas and and every angle dailed to the Seas and and and color of the Seas and and and and and a seas and a season and a sea

like chunged in the hand of action was to any

TO



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND GRAVE COVNSELLOR

EDVVARD Lord ZOVCH, Lord
Warden of the Cinque ports,&c.

THE ARGVMENT. The beautier of visits

Of the Glorie of a Souldier.



Ince in the Time past we have no interest at all, and in that of the present we can challenge no more but an Instant, how behovefull is it (noble Sir) for every man to bee carefull to what ends his Imployments ayme, that the expence thereof may returne both an acceptable rent to such as may challenge his Seruice, and also some glory to himselfe, by leaving behind those parcels which may give others cause of

honest Imiration. This (my Lord) hath directed me into this path which now (with all earnestnesse) I follow, and this emboldeneth mee to send this Epistle to your Lordship, to give you a instanceount of my Time, Studie, and Service, which as it is not altogether a Stranger, so I hope it may a little revive againe those thoughts, which how socuer you may be pleasted to lay by, yet I know you will never ytterly for sake or abandon.

I haue in the former Epiftle shewed the necessary vse both of Warre, and the Souldier, and that as the maine Columbe of a Common-wealth, it keepes all estates vpright and euen. Now I am to ascendrothe Glorie thereof, then which there is not any slame of profession what soeuer that can aspire beyond it, or of the goodnesse of his sires make a Starre more fixed and enduring: for as all Arts are sooner attained then this, by quiet studie, warme ease, and sound rest, neither perplexing the mind, nor putting the body in danger: so the Souldier (whose ends are euer high and great) sindes difficultie in all his designes, dangers in his attempts, and death both the Crown and Song of his Conquest and Triumph: nor are they sutable to any particular proportion, but euen married and allied to euery warlike action; as, whether with Alexander he seeke the conquest of the world, or with Hanibal striue but to defend a particular citie: for Souldiers

Souldiers cannot march farre fitting still, nor compasse much with poore endeauors, as their aymes are great, so must be their actions and as their defires are infinite, fuch must be their dangers: which considered, it must necessarily follow, that their glory ought farre to exceed all others. Souldiers are for the most part men of great and incomparable Spirits. which is such a glorious Garment, and so precious a Iewell wherewith to adorne Vertue, that it fets her forth in the highest degree of all excellencie and perfection, where on the contrary, base, low, little and straight minds, who have nothing of price in them but life, not any thing wife but their feares, nor any Bountie more than a continual affection to worldly riches. These are in no fort fit for emploiments of this Martiall and high nature. The true Souldier takes Scipio for his example, and is like him, spare of speech and ever musing; lookes upon Salust, and with him is fecret in his counsels, but open in his actions; and admires Furius Camillus, with whom hee is neither puffed vp by any successe in Fortune, nor yet abashed or deiected, though his designes runne neuer so desperately to ruine and disorder. Hence it comes, that the greatest Princes stile all men of Warre their Fellow-Souldiers; and the meanest amongst them (in the way of Vaffailage ) disdaine to serue the greatest persons, well may they ferue vnder them, but cannot be truly faid to fetue them: their hands they may commaund to vie the Sword, nor to carry a Trencher, their minds they may inflame with courage, not quench with flattery; and their bodies they may facrifice to Glory, but not offer vp either to their Lusts, Pride or Ambitions.

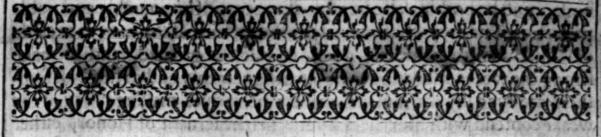
All Warres are either Offenfiue or Defenfiue, to inuade others, or preferue themselves, either of which no man ought to vndertake but for a glorious purpose. To God belongeth our actions, to him therefore and his Glorie ought all Warre to bee dedicate: For Warres offensive or Inuading, they must euer be either to plant Gods Name and Christian Religion amongst vs, or else to regaine those Rights and Dominions, which(formerly being given from God)haue been iniuriously taken and withheld from the true and lawfull owners: and of this we have plentifull examples in holy Writ, both in the Stories of Moses, Iosua, David, and the Maccabees, of which (if wee should speake particularly) some haue been commaunded by Gods owne mouth to make warres, to destroy, yea to take no Truce, but to kill every living Soule: others have themselues assumed Armes, to these ends, and by these examples; and some haue regained their vniust losses by a lawfull Warre, vnder a diuine authoritie. As these, so other great mindes (though much lesse in true holy knowledge, and with a much scanter Warrant) furnished with great successe, have imbarked themselves into great actions, and prepofing humane ends, as Scales to their high Thoughts, have become gloriously victorious in the world; as Ninus in the first age, Cyrus in the second, Alexander in the third, and Cafar in the fourth: all these have had glorious ends, and famous Names, and their memory will continue whilft Time hath continuance. But when I fixe them against the Sun-

**Thine** 

shine of Christian and godly Captaines, such as was our first Richard in the Holy land, Burbon before Rome, Great Henrie of France against the League, or our renowned Henries of England pulling their Birthrights som such as vsurped them: then me thinks likenew Starres they are either lost at their first sinding, or like eclipsed lights have in themselves no beautie but such as is borrowed.

The Glory which appertaines to a perfit Souldier is of a two-fold Nature, the one Terrestriall, the other Celestiall: of the first no doubt euery Heathen Conquerour will be a glorious partaker, and memorie shall keepe their memories, as long as Marble, Brasse, or the leaves of Bookes shall endure: But the Champions of the Almightie shall be glorified for euer and cuer, both heere in the world, and after beyond all worlds. First therefore let Gods Battels be fought, for that is the Tithe of our duties : Next, our Princes, for that is the Rent of our Service : and lastly, our Countries, for that is the Fee due from our Gratitude : and in these two latter obligations there ought to be such a corespondence with Goodnesse, that Princes ought not to ingage themselues in any action without God, because God will not commaund vs any imployment but by the Prince, whom hee hath affigned his Deputic, forbidding vs Warre but for the King, and not to dare (in any semblance whatfoeuer) to leuie or raife Armes, but by and at the especiall commaundement of the King: for foglorious is the profession of a Souldier, that it is onely to bee raifed for God by the King. Subjects in other things have great Priviledges, in this they are confined, for Warre is Gods great businesse, and whosoeuer leads, he still should be Generall.

Now for warres Defensiue (which questionlesse are more warranted) they have likewise most glorious ends: For when God hath given to a people a Prince either by iust Conquest, or lawfull Succession, if then the violence of Tyrannie, the faishood of Treason, or the greedinesse of Ambition, seeke to subuert and dispossesse what God hath planted: O how justly then are Armes assumed, and how infinite is the Glory which depends on fo noble a Reformation! Slaughter(a thing most odious to God and Nature ) in this case Heauen doth not onely permit it, but commaund it; and men-killers in this feruice shall bee crowned not alone with Oake, but with Lawrell; nay to fuch perfection they attaine, that men dying with wounds of this vertuous nature, like fo many Martyrs (with their last gaspe) they are borne triumphantly into heauen: I meane not those wicked Darers, which make the Warres their whoore, on whom they vent the pollutions of their swaggering Natures, making Rapin, Ryot, and Disorder the three cornerd cap to couer the head of their purpose. But such as vndergoe the cause of Conscience, whose Warrant is from God, and whose actions are mooued by a follid and stedfast dutie fixt on their Prince and Countrey. These doubtlesse ( how great soeuer the streame of Blood be which they spill) shall shine with Martyrs at the last day; yea, though accompanied C<sub>2</sub>



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND MARTIALL ROBERT

BARTVE Lord Willoughbie of Eresbie.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the true Honor of a Souldier.



Owsoeuer your Lordships owne experience being apparelled in all the richest garments belonging to the noble art of Warre, (as Observation in executions, Confideration in Counfailes, and wisdome in the election of the one or the others aduantage) may make mine Epistleapeare naked, or at least but thinnly clad in respect of your greater knowledg; yet when I see how the greatest Captaines have

beene inflamed with their Souldiers actions, and that Alexander from a filent muse, would runne into a martiall distraction at the warlike sound of the Ionian musique, how euer strooke by the hand of a meane musitian; I could not but add courage to my labour, and rather enlarge my desires then abate them, knowing that who sings to the skilfull, shall euer reape praise or instruction, but to play to the rude and not knowing, Scorneis his portion, for betwixt ignorance and art, no vertue yet could make a perfit reconcilement. To you then (my Lord) that are a Souldier, to you that know a Souldier, and to you that loue a Souldier I fend this Souldierly falutation, which howfocuer the weakeneffe of words may deface; yet your Lordshippe shall find it hath an honest ayme, and though it hit not the Bird in theeye, yet I doubt not but it will be fo direct it will thed some of her feathers.

If any Raunge of persons in the world deserve true honour, it must needs be the Souldier; for as his disposition holdeth the neerest alliance to it, so doth his merrits by an infallible Interest, instly and truely claime it; for the very Baffe or Ground whereon all his actions are

built.

built, must be nothing else but goodly peeces of honourable and noble perfection. The protection of Ladyes, the defence of Orphans, the reliefe of Widdowes, to helpe the good, to ease the griened, and to make strong the weake; all these are noble designements, and to these all souldiers are tyed by a thousand chaines of vertues making; Nay, if the weake contend with him, he is bound (as the servant of Honor) either to yeeld, or at least (though with losse) to come to a faire compositions Flint Ariketh not fire out of woole but out of Steele, nor must the Souldier dart his flames downe on the Rivers, but fend them vp to reflect on the mountaines, his heart must be vndaunted when hee meetes with power; but foft and vulnerable when it grapples with disabilitie, this made Numa apeale Inpiter with heads of garlicke, not heads of men; and this made Alexander execute the rigor of his vowe rather on the Assethen on his keeper, and hence came that heroicke and memorable laying that Alercy pardoneth those who baue not deserved it, and the luster that wrath is, the more commendable is Mercy; all the quarells of Souldiers must be Iust, for no ocasion must enforce him to vndertake an vnworthy thing, he must warre for God, his Prince and Country oppresled , not for enuy, displeasure, or to make his bounds without limit, hee must be mooued for goodnesse selfe, not gaine (which mooues every marchant or peasant) and when all the vertues of a souldier haue brought him to the toppe of felicitie, yet must not the prosperitie of his affaires, any thing withdrawe his minde from the love of peace and a laudable friendshipp, and to this the very heathens may give rules to our christian Nations, for thus war'd Scipeo in Affirica, Scilla in Spaine, and Cafar amongst the Gaulls, by this Augustus closed up the Temple of Ianus, and for this Tiberius lent Drasus to see the warrs in Illyricum; and to conclude these noble entendments made Henry the great of France, to faue Paris when he might have spoyled it, & at Longenall when the defolation of all the strangers army was in his power; and that with one breath hee might have hewed them in pieces, even then he puts downe his Pystolland saued them saying, Hee would not let them suffer harme, which were not in case to doe any.

As thus there Actions ought to bee honorable, so likewise must bee their words and speaches, maintaining that Truth and Iustice in their language, as once being engaged vnder the faith of a Souldier; no danger or extreamity whatsoeuer may have the least shew or suspition, either to change or abate it, this made Fabritius say that he which tooke away his enemie otherwise then by Iustice, or the event of warre was a coward, and seemed to seare that which he should contemne; and this made Tiberius tell a Prince of the Celies, that Rome had a sword to kill with, not an Appothecaries shoppe; this was it which ever made Marcellus invoke the Sunne to gaze on his actions, and the contrary to this made the King of Bithinia a byword to all Nations, and an example of

falshood and the breach of hospitality.

As the Actions and words of Souldiers must thus bee compannion'd

with honor, fo must also their thoughts and inward intentions; make ing their mindes nothing elfe but neare and curious veffels whering carry the facred liquor of care and pretious Honor nay their very affection ons and paffions multbee governd and fwaid by honorable motions, they must love for honor, hate for honor, defire nothing but honor, and dare anything forthe defence of honor; If honorfuffer of hang in the hallance ready to be operfivaid with the powze of injurie, then must the fouldier march through thicke and thinne, through fire, froft a sods and Seas : through fisor, wounds, blood, nay even into the very jawes. and devouring teeth of eminent and certaine chazard, all for the reprive of so deare a thing as innocent bonor. And on the contrary part, if hot nor forbidany attempt (how glorious and gratious foeuer in humaine apprehension) yetmustinor then the noble Souldier dare to touch ir mo not fo much as bend a thought against it, were all the crownes and garlands in the world flackt downe for his recompence no luker must indice him, no pleafure feduce him, nor any glory inchaunt him. Honor is the Souldiers Mistris, and her commandements are so sacred that it were high Treason to God, to nature and good manners to violate her least Statute; Besides he is so curious of disgrace, and so jealous of any imaginary imputation, that who foeuer will enjoy her must bee as carefull and fearefull to perserve her vnspotted, Oh Sacred Honor thy knot is inuiolable, and betwixt thee and vertue is such a faithfull conjunction that nowisdomewill, no Charme can, and no good Sword dare euer seeke to deuide you.

But pausealittle, for me thinkes I hearesome objections thundred against me? what? doe all Souldiers enioy Honor? no: nor doe all deserve her? excellent were that Edict, if all that deserve her might enioy
her; what? is she then incertaine? no neither; only shee is coy in her
wooing, and comes to her louers after a sundry fashion; yet let no Souldier be discouraged, for whosever truly doth deserve her; shall be sure
to enioy her, either here, or in a place of better residing; for there is no
maxime truer then this, that men are full of blindnes, and such as often
have the distribution of Honor doe sometimes mistake their marke, and
hit a contrary object, yet notwithstanding whosever truely deserveth;
set him thus farre assure himselfe; he shall either sinde honor, in this
world, or in the present, or in the future time, or (which is best of all)
in another world, even to the vetermost length of the longest eter-

nity.

But doth the honor of a Souldier heere take vp its Inne and rest; hath it no other harbor but his Actions, Words and Thoughts? yes, the very gestures, shewes and outward fashions of a Souldier must also be honorable, no looke, no behauiour, no countenance whatsoever but like Achistes Speare must both wound and heale, to his friends he must be amiable and chearefull, and throwing his beames of love into their bosomes, like Romulus dart they must have the vertue to take roote, and by no other strength be able to be remodued, thus shall his sweetenesse

drawe and fixe Soules inseperably vnto him, and thus shall a noble popularity arme him with a love which no violence can conquer; to this fweetenesse of countenance, he must adde the cheerefulnes of his valour and by the examples of his person drawall hands to affift him, hee must be the first in assaults and last in retraites, in all keeping such a composed hermony of distinct and noble parts, that from the characters of his well framed graces, all his followers may draw, Courage, Care or Controulment; On the contrary part, his countenance to his Enemie must be terrible, his blowes heavy and frequent, his advantages fo foone gained, and his disadvantages so soone perceived that the world in the least of these persit things may know how to shape or modell forth all the sundry parts of Honor, in the most compleatest perfection.

To conclude this Epistle, he that shall thus linke every facultie in him to Honor; shall be able in any assault of fortune whatsoever to expresse these three noble duties: first that of a King (shewing authority and good fortune) then that of a Captaine (ordering things speedily, wisely,

without disorder, without danger) and lastly that of a Souldier making good every place where hazards are most liberally bestowed; this is a Souldiers Honor, and this is most excellent. all concessing the technique of Ohs even Henry kno him

domerall, no Chartel can and of good Sword one cast in

parlice Real Cheme Ingites I leare foure obie Die erabund uda-

which are an entire to the state of the stat

good his verious Provis and Theorems yes, are ve-

DWG"

the west and best vested to be one of a Sould a make soil to be

the so the translation to countries whatever by fire

and able and departually as I carbying his beamer of marines their bolorness like Aport in during the range of the years to raide round, and The of the tree is before the poored, thus fields in controlle

the find to the second to second the first both to detail of the factor will be seed on the party of

and so west her all divertue a find to find a find to a

dell'inet where dorall Shuldlers dolov serve countries doe.

OT.



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HOPEFVLL YOVNG GEN-

tleman, HENRIE VVEST,

Lord La-Ware.

#### THE ARGUMENT.

The Vertues of a Souldier.



Ince (my good Lord) the Profession of a Souldier is necessary, his ends glorious, and his qualitie honourable, let vs now enter into consideration what kinde of person is sittest to vndergoe this excellent calling: and in this might bee held an infinite disputation; but the rules of Symetrie lose here their proportion, I must therefore conclude that the sittest man to make a Souldier, is a persit Gentleman:

for generous Spirits are euer aptest for great designes; yet in respect multitudes compound armies, and that Gentlemen are not of that infinite increase in all parts to supply them; I must this affirme in the right of all Souldiers, that whose great minde soeuer willingly carrieth him to the imbracing of this noble Profession, whatsoeuer his Birth be, his minde is generous; and although his imployment may rest at the lowest degree of Fortune; yet vpon the first apprehension of Vertue, equall Tuffice should allowe him the Stile and Reward of a Gentleman of the Companie. Next Birth, his Education should be liberall and free; neither in the seruitude of Apprentices, nor basenesse of Slaves, for both are badges of vnworthinesse. The earliest age to passe Musters, is at seuenteene: for before the bodie is weake in performance, and after it will daily grow more mature till it attaine to perfection. Loffe of time is offensiue, and as Hypocrates faith of Physicke, so shall a Souldier finde of the Warres, that it is Ars longa, Vita breuis. For his Size or Proportion, he rould be witht generally, Strong, Active, Comely, and Perfect; and though of these all cannot bee found to fill up all places, yet the more the

the better and fitter for this purpose. The Warres (no doubt) can produce men which have weake Sences, and worse Limbes, yet commonly they are such on whom wounds in Seruice have bestowed those fauours, and so are accounted no Scarres but Glories; for Honour ever fets her Seale deepe on her valiantest servants, and those which thus carry the stampe of great actions, are (for the most part) men of experience, and though fitter for direction then execution, yet fo behoovefull for both, that without them sometimes the whole Bodie of Armes would recle and wauer: But when I come to thinke of a minde befitting a Souldier, I can onely fay this, That how curious, costly, plaine or deformed soeuer the Cabanet be, yet must it necessarily be filled with all manner of Vertues; Vice must bee as that deadly foe with whom he will neuer make Truce, or euer capitulate; and the Bulwarke to withstand her assaults, must be his Pietie and Religion; vnder the guard of these he must finde his securitie: for hee who every day comes to hazzard his life, had need bee prepared for a good passage; he must be valiant (for that is a Souldiers proper vertue) valiant to conquer his Countreyes foes, and valiant to ouerthrowe his owne passions. What great attempt is done but by daring? Alexander that had fwomme ouer the armes of the Sea Helisponte, will not bee stayed at the passage of the River Granicke; Cafar will bee seene at Pharsalia, Augustus at Philippi, and Varre in Spaine. To conclude, all the perfection of Fortitude in one Christian Souldier, Henrie the great of Fraunce, will bee feene to take Eaux, with but eight men in his company, and when a flaue clapt his Harquebuze to his bosome, faying, (Now I could) the King strooke it away with his Pistoll, and replied, (But doe what God will let thee.) At the taking of Cahors, the next vnto him was slaine, and when mens courages began to faint, it is faid that his valour did like liquid Bitumen, let all on hire that were about him. At Nerac with ten horse hee received the charge of three hundred; made good his ground, and recouered his safetie with such warlike discretion, that the Marshall Marignon blushing, cried out His Fortune was infinite. Infinite others I could recite, but this is is enough to shew that a Souldiers valour link't with discretion, is seldome or neuer forfaken of good Fortune.

To this Valour then, Wisedome must needs be joyned; for if in any condition of men true Iudgement be requisite, it must be in a Souldier, for to him belongs the discerning eye which seperates God from Euill, right from wrong, and faire play from Iniurie, both in graue consultations, where the State and Prince are engaged, as also in cases of Religion, where God and mans Conscience have an equall partaking. Also vpon present occasion, when Battering, Assaulting, Mining, sometimes fighting hand to hand, giving and receiving advantage according vnto times and seasons are in the Solstice of their Greatnes, what Iudgement is then to be applied, who is so simple as hath not a sence to imagine. To this Wisedome must suffice be annexed, and as our Souldier himselse must be suft, so suffice is quarrell, and as suff the vse and

manage of his weapon; his lawfull Prince must imploy him, not the heate of his owne Blood or defire of Action his Alleageance must move him, not hope of Aduauncement; and his Conscience must tie him, not Spoyle or Boot haling. The Sword that is imbrewed in Christian blood, must have a strong acquittance, or the Soule that rul'd it must answere for Blood; therefore let rather the commandement of him that hath power constraine thee, then thine owne ambition leade thee. and being constrained, make not all fish which comes to thy net atake not all thou canst catch, nor force not all thou canst subdue : remember the loffe of Blood is dangerous, if Nature doth not confent voto it, nor the Physition allow it. Know it is so necessary for the preservation of mans body, that from what part focuer it goes, we mult focke to flay it: and to that purpose Numa made a Law, and Licurgus observed a Law; therfore in all thine attempts, spare blood as much as conveniently thou canst: Raze no Temples, deface no Monuments, nor defile Virgins: hold that Maxime amongst Souldiers for a Paradox, which affirmes, That when men enter by affault, it is lawfull to vie all manner of outrage and violence. Iustice hath an cuener Scale, by which to measure mens actions, and for mine one part I am of opinion, that howfoeuer it bee a Militarie Position grounded on two causes: the one, to deterre the enemie from standing to the last minute; the other, to encourage those whose endes are spoyle and reuengement, yet there is a fayrer path vnto Conquelt, and the cruellest Princes that ever breath'd have stayed themselves in this carriere, where by the examples of other sufferings, they have lookt into their owne frailties, and feeing they were but men, have acknowledged that somewhat might happen in an instant, which might make them no more what they were, or send them fornewhere else, or leave them not to be at all; and indeed I have seene worthy Commanders most strictly forbid it.

Laftly, our Souldier must both in himselfe and in all things bee exceeding Temperate, commanding himfelfein all paffions, without Anger, Feare, Hate, or Lust, in such fort as he may ever stand vpon himselfe, and be to himselfe the selfeSupporter. To his enemies he must be queath his Anger, to God, his Feare; to vice, his hate; and if hee lust at all, it must be euer after Vertue. He must be Temperate in dyet; for Souldiers are ever subject to excesse: which I rather gather to proceed from their wants at other times, then from the naturall inclination of an vnrestrained fancie; for as our Feastes commonly succeed our Fastes: so when Souldiers have been griped with hunger, and then come to the overflow of abundance, Moderation leaves them, and defire findes no curbe by which to be restrained. But because such as will doe much, must of necefficie fuffer much, let our Souldier in this place arme himselfe with all the strength of indurance, let him make companions of long Marches, tharpe Abstinence, painefull watchings, early wakings, and hard lodgings: let him take Silence by the tongue, and Secrecie by the bosome; let him wooe all distemperatures, and sticke them as fauours

D 2

about

Names at other times, then from the natural inclination of an valedhair hed fancie; for as our Feafles commonly faceced our Faffes: 10 when Souldiers have been griped with hones cand then come to the outshow of abundance. Modernt on legues them, and define findes no curbe by third to be refer sined. But because face as will document, mail of ac-

the fluctigeth of indurance, fer him make companions of long Marches, that per Abstitutes, painefull watchings, carly wakings, and hard lodgings; ier him take Silence by the tongue, and Secrecie by the bosomes let him wode all discompensations, and looks them as faucus

muda

efficie funer much, ier our Souldier u

# TO THE RIGHT HO NORABLE AND NOBLE

GEORGEIBARKLEY, LOUGBARKLEY and belegen betegen belegen betegen betegen betegen betegen betegen betegen betegen betegen betege

for bendes his eminent Toma M v a SeA is a T od vonchfi

The Reward of a Souldier.

Auing Imbarqued my selfe into this Ocean of Millitary profession, there is no remedy (my very good Lord) But however crazic on vanight my pore Vessell be, it must still put forth into the Sea; & (though storms speak neuer so loud) wrastle among them, being now too late either to sould vp Saile or cast Anchor, since shame is a nearer Neighbour to the Retraite, then hope or glory could be to the

Onset: Be it then your Lordships noble fauour to saue this pore Epistle from the wracke of Enuy, and when it shall ariue at your presence, bee pleased to heare the Message it shall deliver, and I doubt not but though it can bring litle to fortisse or augment your knowledge, yet it shall leave behind something worthy to be rerayned in your best Memory.

Thaue (my Lord) in the foregoing Epittles discoursed how Necessary, Glorious, Honorable, and Fersions the profession of a Souldier is 3. It restants now that I proceed to the Reward or Merrit due to so excellent a calling 3 for there can be no capacity so absurd or vingratefullas to deny aduty so fit and absolutly belonging, and which indeed ought neither by Conetousnesses to be made lesse, nor by any vsurpation to be conferred or past over to a Subject of a lower Station, how gaudy or glorious source in common or perticular aprehension.

The Reward of a Souldier is no new thing, neither is it derived from any weake circumstances; for it hath Gratitude as a guid to leade it, and Good-Example as a sweete companion with which it holdeth continually Fellowship, so that when at any time this duty of Reward is neglected by them in whom this Office of distribution consisteth; there not only hapneth an imputation of forgotten thankefulnesse, (which is a great breach to all humaine society, but also a violent suppressing or keeping downe of vertue, by depriving the world of those presidents which should inflame and stirre others to noble achivements (which is the veter ecay and losse of Courage,) for all Meric hath its Reward, and every Reward begeteth a new Merit from the brauery of the example; It is no new thing for it began in the first world, even in that which

was most goulden, for doe but search ouer the Sacred Scriptures & you shall finde them exceeding plentifull both of examples and Commande. ments which may be fuited to this purpose; as first in Moses who has uing authority from God himselfe to goe before the Ifractives and to lead them vnto warre, hee that was Gods greatest Generall, and the greatest Gouernour of the greatest Army, he that commanded all and was obey. ed of all, that made Colonels ouer Tribes, and Captaines ouer companies. that being ordered himselfe by God, ordered all his martiall affaires according to Gods appoyntment; was not he that thus pleafed God, of God fingularly rewarded? yes doubtleffe, &that in an infinite measure, for besides his eminent command and greatnes, God vouchsafed to speak with him face to face, to direct him in all his designes, to give blessinges to all his proceedings, & (which never any but himselfe could boast off) to discouer vnto him so much of his Heauenly Essence as mortality was able to behold, or mans nature reach to in the height of admiration; God Created him a Duke ouer Ifraell, victorious in many Battailes, and hath spread his fame so vniuersally ouer the face of the whole world, that it cannot decay or perish, but shall continue to the end of the world; nether was this Reward of martiall excellence bounded only vpon Mofes and no other, but dilated and extended fourth it felfe, even to the lowest Souldier in his Campe & meanest wel deserver; for in recompense of their prowesse he gave them that land which slowed with milke & hony.

To Iofua (who was appoynted Mofes lucceffor) God gave the like honors, the like Reward, and the like admiration; nay he made the Sunne attend his Battels, and wherefocuer he fet downe his foote, there fortunate Conquest ever stood by him. What shal I speake of Danid (who for his Conquest got both a Crowne and the Kings daughter) and a world of others: of which examples the Scriptures are infinite rich, for even our Sauiour Christ himselfe doth not only alow the Souldier his pay, but also in many places speaketh of the greatnes of the Centurions and their worthy aduancements; which proofes, fince they are about all poofes, it is needles to wade further into humaine examples; But let euery one in whom the power of rewarding of Souldiers doth confift, apply himselfe to decas his Master hath done before him; who although for his excellency and perfection he be altogether vnimitable, yet in as much as he accepteth this Quantum in Nobis; let them ftriue to doe the vttermost of their endeauours, and know that God accepteth a willing attempt, though it be done neuer fo weakly.

But the question (in this place) resteth what the Reward is, which Souldiers may most propperly challenge: to which I reply, that there are in this world three most especiall things, which as Honorarie and Hereditary rights depend and belong to every well deserving Souldier; that is to say Fame, Honor and Wealth, for without these hee can hardly subsist, because they are the matter or Cement which gleweth or bindeth him

and his vertue inseperably together.

To speake then of the first, there is nothing which a Souldier ought to defire

defir in this world before a good Fame, for it is the food of his reputation and nourisheth Honor with such sweete milke, that it growes so able and strong as no difaster or mischance of Fortune can moue or shake it, much leffe abale or subnert it, neither ought he to thirst after any thing with a more greedy appetite then after good Fame, because it quencheth althe Rames of euill report, and maketh Slaunder fo dumbe & toungty'd, that it dare not fuffer bad words to have any alliance with murmuring, nor false bruits with rash judgements of publique actions, neither dare acknowledge any vertue to be greater then that of obedience; Now as this must be a good Fame, so it must be a true Fame not a false shaddow, ether fuborned from the vulgar by deceite, or arrogated by power from other mens bloody fiveats or dangerous achiuements, it must not be politique vices daub'd ouer with vertuous habits, as Cruelty with Instice, Basenesse, with Humility, Prodigality with Bounty, or Auarice with Thrift; for all these are piebald counterfeite reproaches and no true Fame; that which is good Report indeed like gold can neither rot nor bee changed into any other metall; it will endure the tefte of the strongest Enuy, and abide the touch of the purest wisdome or judgement; It is not so light or insubstancial to be carryed about the ayre with every whirle-wind, nether yet fodull and leaden heel'd, but vpon any noble and worthy occafion it can flie to the vitermost corners of the earth, and like a curtaine, cloath all the Ayre from one fide to another; This is that which a Souldier may pursue without disgrace, and posesse without malice, yet when he is come within distance (and that like an eager Faulcon it stoopes to his lucr) let him rather receive it then assume it, for it is a coy Mistris at which a man may reach but not fnatch, yet if any iniuriously should feeke to rauish it, or deprine the deseruing owner of it, I am of this opinion; that if in any case a Duell might be admitted, then this is the prede d'Allen de la Verte de la constant de la constan fident,

The fecond reward belonging to a Souldier is Honor, which as men must endeauour to deserue, so Princes must vouchsafe to bestow; neither ought they to hoodwinke their eies in these occasions, but Lyon like to fee into Deferts both fleeping & waking, for as Souldiers mult featter & lose their actions, so Princes must find them and cloath them with a merit due to their goodues, for it is no part of the nature of a good Souldier to hunt after Honor, or like a rauenous Beast to make prey his obica; much leffe to buy it with bribes, or make it his whore with which to fornicate, tis blood, not gold which hath ever beene the price of Honor, and how soener base people are comonly the best hoarders of gold, & fo with that witch craft inchaunt many times vndeserued Honor vnto them, yet let the true Souldier lose that imperfectio (for the act is vowor thy) & let it suffice him to deserve it though others inioy it; It is not questi onable but every man in his due place (by the mediation of his vertue) should receive Honor according to his Range, as the Generall of an Army Royall may well deserve to ranke with a Duke (for from thence I boubt not but Dux first tooke his originall) a Livetenant generall with

an Earle, the Martiall of the Field with a Viscount, the principall Colonels with Barons; and the inferior Gommanders with inferior places, according to the pleasure of the Prince, and worthynes of his vertue, for as Honor is only the Princes by right, so in the distribution thereof he ought to performe all rights; All what soeuer the Souldier can say is his; in that hath the Prince the greater interest, which finding to be imployed only in his commandements, how he bound both vnto Truth & Care that the distribution of Honor be justly performed, in which when soe uer he swarueth from the right path he not only indangers his vertue,

but makes a pittifull hazard of his owne Honor and Safery.

The last but least Reward of a Souldier is Wealth or temporall Goods: which howloeuer in some measure they may be dispised, yet are they so necessary for our frailtie; & such a defence against the tempests of War, that without them a Souldier can neither performe nor continue the duties of his Calling, and therefore the bestowing or vse thereof admits great confideration, for they are to be accommodated both to the qualitie of the person, and nature of the place in which the Souldier is imployed; fitting the proportion of the Souldiers entertainement to the greatnes or smalenes of his rancke and advancement, neither should the limitation of this entertainement bee circumscribed within the bounds of the Warres only; but howfocuer they wane or decrease yet should the well deserving Souldier at no time bee neglected, and herein the King of Spaine observeth a most noble course, who to all Officers of what Raunge locuer, continually dothallow penfions for life fuitable to their degrees, how ever either the sessation of warre, or Imbecillity of person makes them vnfite for imployment: Competency is a convenient Bounty, and though to nourish Armyes weaken the powers of the richest Princes, yet to relieue Officers & men of eminet & high vertue, is an obligatio to which they are bound by a rule in Contiece; for to this purpose Constantine built the great Colledge of Saint Johns neare Ierusalem; Spaine boafts the great reuenewes due to the order of Calatrana; and we here in England keepe the memory of Master Suttons famous foundation. The Romans did studie many other rewards for Souldiers as Tryumphs, orders of Knighthood, Rings, Funeral orations, Crownes, Garlands, Roabes & a world of other denices; all which were as Spurs to fet them forward in the Carcire to vertue through all dangers what socuer, that doing almost Actions impossible, they not only brought the greatest but the best part of the world under their subjection; And doubtles there is nothing in the world that can so soone summon vp a mans spirits to vertue as the hope of reward, for it is the Adamat which draweth the Ironheart aloft, making it foare into the clowds & to be infefible of those paines, which without this matter of prize would make things (fecible & easie) seeme inaccessible, difficult & not to be indured; let no man then rob Honors workman of his hyer; but rather ad & fill vp his measure to the hyest continent, so shall he give the Angels cause to reioyce, fill the world with praise, & make the hearts of mena sacrifice to his goodnes.



### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND MOST AVSPICIOUS LORD

VVILLIAM PARKER, Lord
MORLEY and MOVNT-EAGLE
my very good Lord.

#### dy minorfolo de the THE ARGVMENT. I moindidas per

## od no no to to of Voluntaries.

He Range of this Epistle did no sooner point me to your Lordship, when presently there arose in my remembrance a thousand figures of those fauours and delights which in the first Spring of mine age I had gathered from your noble Goodnes, all which did not onely inuite, but constraine me to a serious consideration how I might beautisse & adorne this sacrifice of my pen, to make it appeare vnto you

like my heart, both faithfull and vnchanging. But when I lookt into the Bluntnesse of mine owne nature, the vnfitnesse of Curiositie in so rough a subject, and the little valew of words, if Sence doe not compound the Musique, I presently concluded that the neerest way to my purpose was to bee farthest off from affectation, and that your Lordship would then soonest beleeue there was no sparke of my first affection quencht or concealed, when you saw I sought still to serue you with the same plainnesse and Truth which I had ever professed.

The matter which I am to discourse in this Epistle is the dignitie and vse of those Souldiers, which we call by the name of Foluntaries, being a ranke of men which voluntarily, and of their owne meere motion, without any constraint at all, doe betake themselues vnto the Warres, grounding the strength of their desires thereunto, vpon some vertuous and honest purpose, and of these there are divers kindes, as some Noblemen, some Gentlemen, and some Ycomen, all Freemen, Good men, Able men, and these have divers inducements to draw them to this purpose, as either some especial obligation of service to the Generall, or some other great person then commanding in the warres, or else an instammation of courage, kindling a desire to behold the warres, and

E

to learne the misteries theros, either they are stirred up with the goodnes of the quarrell, or else admonished thereunto by a vertuous emulation in beholding the glory of other mens advancement: for thus was Hanibal sent to the warres, and brought up in his fathers pavilion: thus Tiberius made Drusus a Souldier, and thus went Iugurth to Affrica, that hee might become Scipios Scholler: this made Henry the great of France, a Generall at ten yeares of age: this made the Duke of Austria to be stilled the sonne of Fortune, and this makes the Prince of Orange (that now liveth) the admiration of all Souldiers, and questionlesse in a noble Spirit nothing appeareth of greater lustre: for it is a rule, that who soever will endeanour to command, he must first learne to obey; and hee that will hereaster

be imitated muft himselfe haue the practise of others imitations.

These Voluntaries for the most part arme themselves according to their owne pleasures; for they are both intended to bee men of wealth and abilitie, and also a great ease to the publike purse, in as much as they ought to liue on their owne charge', without the Princes pay, or the warres exhibition: it is also lawfull in them to make election in what manner thay will ferue, whether on horsebacke or on foot, or on both, as the occasion of present service shall administer vnto them: for having both horse and attendants to accommodate them in every necessitie, they need not be absent in any Seruice, but may be witnesses of whatsoeucr is done, bee it either after the one, or the other manner. These as they receive no pay, so they passe no Musters, neither are they tied to any strictnesse of any particular dutie, but as free and noble Gentlemen may bestow their houres in any honourable fashion: They may onely claime the benefit of the Generals Table, and a principall respect both from the greatest and the lesser Commanders: for thereby there is not onely brought a sweetnesse both to their expence and hazards, but also it giueth a notable incouragement to others to pursue the like course, and fo become more enabled to performe excellent things, when either their King or Countrey shall have cause to imploy them. And for mine owne part I haue scene, when in the necessitic of affaires, and when the approch of the enemy hath awakened a double Regard to preuent danger, that these voluntary Gentlemen haue beene more diligent in Watches, and more seuere in performing all manner of duties then any mercenary Souldier whatfocuer; in which they have shewed both a singular affection to the profession they had vndertaken, made themselves a great deale more able and perfit: and laftly breed both a delight in the well deferuing, and a shame and reproach to those Sluggards whose Cowardise and Sloth hathto the by-standers administred any euill examples.

Valuntaries may challenge in all Marches the most honourable and principall places of the Battell (which are vnder commaundement) as in the morning vpon the point or head of the Vauntguard, and at night (vpon retrait) at the foot or last part of the Reare. If it be in private Companies, they ought (in curtesie) to have the leading of the principal Files, to be in the Reare, or amongst the Middle men and Subdivision at their

owne election, for wherefoeuer they march, they are euer a grace to the Battalia, and both by their courage and example make euen the duileft, apt for to follow their imitation.

Voluntaries were wont to be but some few especiall persons in an Armie, and were accounted Kara Auis in terris : but in thefe our latter fucceeding times, when Generals have (out of popularitie) been leffe sparing of Honour, and more prodigall (then their forefathers) in bostowing all manner of martiall Bounties, what through the enticement of Loue, the hope of Advancement, and the incantation of Knighthood, the number of them hath been infinitly increased: for hat the mixture being wonderfully enproper, and the Priviledges which they assumed needlesse, and without distinction, they have bred such a confusion, that in Marching, Fighting, Lodging, nay not fo much but in Victualing they have rather brought foorth the fruits of Trouble and diforder, then either eafe or perfection to any part of the Armie : and of this both Fraunce and England have tafted in a very large measure; the first inforcing the King to erect his Blanch-Cornet, the other feeing imbarqued both for Cadia and the Islands a Regiment of Voluntaries, farre furmounting any other through the whole Armie; some led by their owne ambition, some by their wives, and some (as they fay dogges goe to Church ) onely for company, without either noble end, or almost a tollerable purpole: for as they were led on by vaine glory y fo commonly they were followed by want, and finished with disgrace and dishonor: for their pride (for the most part) made them foes to Discipline, and their scares and follies kept them in fuch an extrauagant course, that as well might a man rule a herd of wild Bulles as a Band of fuch vnruly Colts, in whom was neither wisdome, order, nor discretion. And to make this good, I dare affirme, that in one feruice, I faw a whole afternoone fpent (by excellent Commanders) in putting two hundred Voluntaries into order, and yet all labor loft, nor was at any time feene to the number of fiftie that flood in their true places. I have seene them also when they have been to march into the field, so pulled for want of knowledge where to place themselves or their vassals, and so offensive to the Generall, by an vndecent crowding and thronging about him, that the particular Officers of the field, as the Scout-masters and Corporals of the field were neither able to approach to receive direction, nor yet able to passe into the armie, to deliver advertisements, where had the company of Voluntaries been competent and orderly, they might then have bin instructed, that the best places had bin neerest to the best persons; and in cases of attempts the likeliest to encounter and meet with the enemy. But how these may truly bee called Voluntaries, I knownot: for every one that is able to suite his bodie in rich clothes, vnlesse he likewise apparell his minde in an obedient and formable fashion, is neither worthy the name, priviledges, nor respects which are due to men of this supposed Vertue. It is therefore to bee vnderstood, that the noble Voluntary indeed ought to be a man of Vertue and Iudgement, Noble in his carriage, and ready to give all maner of E 2 good

good examples: he ought to keepe a table at his owne charge, both for the entertainment of fuch by whose discourse he might reape profit, and also for an ease to the General, whose bounty might otherwise be stretcht vnto too high a reckoning : and to conclude, they ought to be but few in number, and those of principall regard and estimation; for this fluxe is a torrent which drowneth and ouerwhelmeth both Discipline and Order, and from hence it hath come to passe, that I have knowne divers discreet Generals, which have both proclaimed and inserted in their Articles, that no man (of what condition focuer) without his speciall licence, but vpon paine of death within fuch a limitation of time should either inroll himselfe vnder some one or other Captaines colours, or else to depart from the Armie: by which meanes the multitude of Voluntaries were lessened, and none allowed but such as were of the Generals owne election; a course questionlesse full of great prouidence, for by that meanes many weake Troupes and Companies were made strong, much disorder was preuented, and a generall beauty & grace was spread through the whole armie, no man hath received loffe in his entertaincment, vnnecessary checks have been taken away, and the benefit of the Voluntaries bountie hath done good through the whole armie, where as to have erected whole Troupes or new Companies onely of Voluntaries: if the State should take exceptions thereat, and denie the entertainement, then must the Captaines vndergoe either checke and losse, or others meanes must be shortned to draw his within compasse.

Thus I have shewed the Nature, the Honour, the Vie, the Benefit, and the Offence of Voluntaries, of which I know your Lordship in your owne noble Experience haue had a sufficient triall, so that to detaine you with any longer Relation, were but to ouerdoe what I onely striue to doe in the best perfection : and therefore I will here knit vp mine Epi-

ftle with this Protestation, That if in it you will be pleased to discerne my lone, in that lone your Lordship shall ener finde an honest and faithfull Seruice.

Missand to out iting of the Chipped in on

defended on in the interference to the tology of the distribut, nor icable rout! I broade water soul unit

to a series of the foregree of the series of the series and

did meet man had a sensy but work i di vinare ada disin seem but

awarder i denowner of the control of the senate his bottom

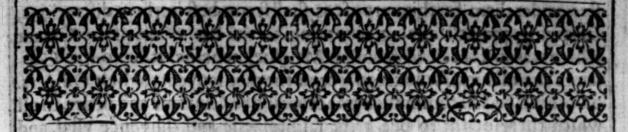
de contrate migrat par la contrate de la glacia de la contrate de

an orth that for the land the land the first of the land the land

them, is mariched translayed a manager to be a port to be des

to be about the that the call the Concess of the field

and the state of t



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND VVELL DISPOSED LORD

RICHARD LEONARD Lord
Dacres of Hurst-monciaux.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of Lewing of Souldiers.

Here is hardly a greater action, or of more importance in a Common wealth (my noble Lord) then that of Leuying of Souldiers, because Armies are the Strengths of Nations, the Saftie of Kings, and the Scourge of oppressors, for by them we take possession of our rights, with them we trample and tread vpon injury, and through them we find the ready path which leades to peace and Tranqui-

lity, so that in leuying & making of these Infinite Bodies; (if a true care and proportion be not held in every member) there will grow disorder and deformitie in the shape and so consequently weakenesse, by which there will be wanting both ability to performe, and fortunate successe

which is the Crowne and glory of every Conquest.

It is to be understood therefore that all Leuyes what soeuer (of Souldiers) are directly from the Kings, and what Subject soeuer shall dare to leuye men for any warrelike purpose without his especial authority, runnes not only into the danger of life, but the losse both of his goods and honor; whence it comes that the Prince being moued to these martiall occasions; gives his power either to the Lords of his privy Counsell, to his Viceroyes & Presidents, to his Lords Livetenants, or other commissioners (such as shall seeme best in his wisdome) to leuye such Colonyes, Bands or companyes as shall be meete for his vse and service, and herein from him only (as the principal sountaine) must first of all be derived the strength of their authority, and after according to the letter of their Commission; they may substitute and appoint such ministers

sters vnder them for this purpose as shall seeme best in their discretions, (inlarging and restraying according to the limitation of the Graunt which was first received from his Maiestie) whether it be to the Captaines themselves, (who are to receive the menseved) to their Officers, or other especiall commissioners according to Custome and order, In all which there ought to bee great faithfulnesse and diligence vsed, and honess men, able men and (as neare as may be ) valiant men should be chosen and that without partiality, malice, injury or distemperance.

Now for the manner of leuying of Souldiers with vs here in England it is done two manner of wayes, that is to fay, either by the found of the Drumme or by presse; If it be by the found of the Drumme then it is a Commission granted for all such as will voluntarily of their owne free wills thrust themselves vnder such a Captaines command and so receiving his presse mony he is as firmely under his commandment as if he had beene prest by any stricter Commission, and this way of levying of Souldiers is generally vied over the most partes of Christendome; But if it bee any especiall presse, then there commeth a Commission from the Lords of the Counsell to the Lords Liuetenants, Deputie Liuetenants or other nominated Commissioners for musters, which declaring the number of men, manner of leuye, and place of Rendeuous, they presently direct their warrants to the cheife Constables of hundreds, and the chiefe Constables their warrants to the petty Constables of Townes and hamlers, which petry Constables doe at the day appointed bring bofore the Commissioners fo many able and sufficient men as they were charged within their warrants, & from them, the Lord Lieutenant, his Deputie or other Commissioners chuse and presse out, (by giving to every man twelvepence in currant money) so many as shall make up the number contained in his Commission, & these men so prest he deliuereth ouer either to the Captaine or his Officers, or to fome other Conductor to be brought to the Rendeuous at the timeperfixed; together with conduct money at the rate of eight pence a day for their charges, and either Clad, Armed, or vnarmed according to the words of the Commission.

This hath beene the auncient manner of leuying and rayfing Souldiers in our Kingdome, nor doe I thinke that any wisdome can finde out
another way which can promise more equitie or faire dealing, especially
as long as the execution of these Commissions are performed by the
Lieutenants themselves who generally are great Princes, and men of
that singular vertue and goodnes that both the love they beare their
Countryes and the care they have of their owne honors, makes them
scorne to exprsse eitheir Spleene or Revenge in so poore a busines, Bur
when these Commissions come out of their singers and are disperced
vnto many, and amongst them sactions and dissentions doe arise, then
one strives to defend one part, another another; one will shew his malice
in thrusting forward, another his power in detayning backe, one will
have his revenge satisfied, another will have his pitty admired; that to

conclude

conclude little equitie can be perceived in their proceedings, and leffe vertue arifes from the fruits of their elections, for many times the deereped and vnfit are pact'd to the warfs & the able are kept at home, who laughing in their fleenes pray for continuance of those larts by which he fits at home and fleepes out vexations; here might a man finde out many other grievances, as the protections of liveryes, the friendship of bribes and the fuite of By-flanders, all which doe often make the King ill ferued, and beleene it in cases of great consequence these perticular homors croffe great defignes; O how excellent were it, if in these common bufinefies men would fer a partall private affections and but only regard the King and his feruice and study (as they ought) only the advancement thereof, then should we see (as Virgill faith) Pollio's returne and the golden Age would be restored againe to vs and our Children; But this is o Ptinam, a wish that vanisheth assoone as it is breathed, and therefore I could wish that in these Inferior Commissions which goe to a generallity; their might be a mixt powre, that isto fay; to the Commissioners and Capraines, and that iountly they would fet a part all partiality, for the Commissioners which are Governors of the Country best know the estate thereof, and what is most wholesome for the generall Body, (though of what belongs to the warres many of them are ytterly ignorant) and fo the Captaine which best knowes what belongs to the warres and must with the hazard of his life lead those men even vnto the face of the enemie, he likewise may be vaskilfull in the wants of the Country; fo that compounding an honest Body of them both there can be neither knowledge nor perfection wanting. On all left vodi angelies

Experience hathlong time fince taught me this, that when the Captaine is not in Commission he may say and informe what hee pleaseth, but the Commissioners will performe what they list, for they have voyces which will drowne him, and a deasenesse which hee cannot open; whereas bearing with them an equall authority, then his thunder must be as lowd, and being an honest man no leuye but will be performed without wronge or disparagement, and herein by all meanes these Captaines must not thinke too welof themselves, (scorning as it were) to receive their men, but sending downe their inserior Officers, stay themselves either at the Court to pursue some new hope, or in the Cittie to provide new cloathes. Now that any other should be mixt with the Commissioners it is not sit nor is there any president; for though the Inferior Officers may be discreete and honest, yet it is the Captaine (which is chosen by the Lords of the Kings Councell) which is probably

sufficient.

Touching the leuyes of Souldiers which are made in the Countries and sent away by Conductors, (which indeed ought to be men that know the warrs and liue with good same and Reputation in their Countryes) I have amongst them observed much soule dealing, as first how they have skimmed the Country of all the froathy, base and deboysed Creatures which have lived therein, then how they have packt away all their worst

worst Armes, & lastly how those Conductors have under the pretence of Sieknes & infirmity for small Bribes made sale of the best of that lamentable Company; as if it had beene a kind of deadly sin to have brought any man with a good countenance in view of the Army; Nay believe it so pitifull have I beheld the Regiments which they have brought over, that like Pharaohs leane Kine they have looked as if they would devoure all the fat in the Army; and surely had that Preacher seene them which preached in Kent before the Generalls of the Portugall action; he would againe & againe thanked these Conductors, for carring away all

the dispised and base Rascalls of the Nation.

To conclude howfoeper thefe errors & corruptions have crept in at some backedore (which humour or Couetousnesse hath set open) yet it is no fixed cuill nor any generall infection, but like a Batte flies far from the light of vertue, lurking in the darke corners of those harts where Anger and Reuenge had first gotten possession, & from thence no doubt it will soone depart when Truth (the Herauld of a good Conscience) shall once declare vnto them the foulnes of their offence, &what injury they doe both to God, their King and Country, when in the least partickle or imagined poynt that can be (which hath refference to the lenying or rayfing of a royall Army) they Iwerue or go awry from that path which leades to the fulnesse of al Integrity & Iustice; let them be pleased but to looke into the Histories of the World, whether the Afgrians, Persians, Greekes or Romans and they shall see how they ever strove to levye for the warrs, Young men, Strong men, Able men, Good men, Risbmen, Gentlemen, they shall in no place finde a president for excuse, nor by any Imprecation of Mother, teares of the Wife, or fighs of the Widdow, learne to make a weeping Oration how to faue or keepe backe their Sonnes, Husbands or Kinsfolke from going to the warrs or coucting to take their last sleepes (and the sweetest) on the Bedde of Honor; They knew the glory of the great Goale, and what Crownes were preferred for a Millitary Martyr, and therefore they reioyced at their entrance thereunto, and thought no Musicke had a sweeter sound then that

which rang in their Eares the Leuye of a Royall Army to defend a cause that was Noble, Honest, and Religious.

strishor fience isthereday prefident for thought he In

leaves of Soulders which are made in the Counties

r Commission (which indeed our nate be mentioned in

ficers may be auto exteand honers, vericistic Captains, which



### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIGH-BORNE EDWARD

STAFFORD Lord STAFFORD of Stafford-castle.

#### THE ARGVMENTA

Of the Arming of Shot.

Auing proceeded (my Lord) thus farre in my range of Militarie Intendments, and brought it past the leuie of mens persons; which persons as they compound companies, so of those Companies arise Regiments, & of those Regiments are made the whole and entire body of the Armie. It remaineth now that we come to a certaine distribution or division of these persons, of which albe I shall have a more

large occasion to speake in the next Decade; yet since here it falles so fit to my purpose. I will only divide the Souldiers which have beene formerly levied into two sorts, the one Shot, the other Pikes; and of the Shot we will suppose them to be either all, or (at least) most part of them Musquets, and the rest Bastard Musquets; for Harquebusses I cannot allow in this place, because they are growne out of vse, and can by no means make their encounter good where the Musquet is opposed against them: for the one killing at twentie score, the other hardly at six, how is it possible hee should come to play within his distance, before all or the most part of the body be overthrowne and destroyed?

Now for the election of the Bodies which are fittest to carry the Musquet they must be such as are strong, square, and of a good, sollid, & well knit constitution: and for such as are more weake, little, and nimble, to them the Bastard-Musquet may be put, for with a little vie, and skilfull instruction they will be brought to order and mannage that peece with as great ease as either Harquebusse or Pistols.

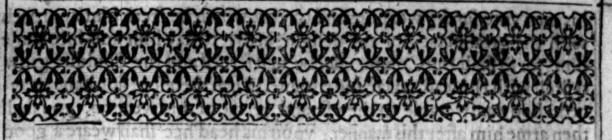
When thus a choice is made both of the man & weapon, you shal then arme him after this manner, that is to say, vpon his head he shall weare

Er

a good and sufficient Spanish Morian well lined in the head with a quilted cap of strong linnen, and bound downe with lined eare-plates vnderneath his chinne; about his body Bautricke-wife, from the left shoulder and under the right arme he shall carrie a Bandiliere of broad Leather. or other richer Ruffe (well stiffened) according to his abilitie, or the pleafure of his Captaine; and to this Bandiliere shall bee fastened by long double strings (at least a quarter of a yard in length a piece, that they may with more ease be brought to the mouth of the Musquet) one large priming charge made small at the vpper end, and at least twelve other charges, all made of some tough light wood, or else of horne, and couered with leather, but not of plate or leather entirely, for they are subject to crushing & bruising, and being once out of fashion, they are hardly recouered, neither will they containe the powder in fuch ample manner as formerly they did, of which the Souldior must be exceeding carefull: for every charge must bee made fit to containe so much powder as will give the peece her full lading, and neither more nor leffe: for as overcharging hazards the breaking of the Musquet, so vndercharging makes her not able to carrie to the full randon. He shall also have by his left side a good and sufficient Sword with a basket hilt of a nimble and round proportion after the manner of the Irish; strong Scabards of liquord or well resend leather, Chapes of yron, and Girdles and Hangers sutable to the same; as for the Blade, it should be broad, strong, and somewhat massie, of which the Turkic, or Bilboe are the best: at his girdle hee shall also carrie his Bullet bagge: in which hee shall beare his Moulds to cast his Bullets: also his Wormes with which he shall cleare his peece when at any time it is cloid either by mischance or ignorance, and his Screwes with which he shall vnloose every vice-pinne or engine about the Musquet, when he either intends to take it in peeces, or else to scowie it, to mend any thing that is out of frame, or otherwise to vnbreech it; and lastly, he shall carrie in it his priming yron, being a small artificiall wiar, with which he shall clense and keepe open the touch-hole of his peece, fo as the priming powder may enter in and make the peece goe off vpon the first touch of any sparke with which it encounters; all this perfitted, he shall bee armed with a good and very sufficient musquet, being of as neate and nimble a cast as can bee made, provided it bee strong, cleane wrought, and of a good temper of yron, the Barrell must bee in length foure foot and a halfe, and the bore according to the fize of a full Mulquet, and tried by the gage or allowance of the Tower of London, the Stocke must be straight, cleane and smoothe wrought, without knots or flawes in any part, but especially towards the lower end, the extreamelt part at the nether end below the breech, should be at least eight inches in depth, flat and smoothe, so as if the peece happen a little to recoyle, yet it may not offend the Souldiers body, and the wood of which thefe Stockes are made, would be either good Wallnut-tree, good Peare-tree, or some other fast, firme, and smoothe light wood, which is neither apt, through the shortnesse of the graine quickly to breake, nor yet through

the largenesse to split or rive in funder: you must have regard that the barrell be smooth, even, and not galled within, that it carry the full bore equally cleane throughout, and not carry Musquet bore at the top, and hardly Harquebusse in the bottome! for it is an abuse too frequent'smongst our Gun-makers, and the effect is nothing else but deceit, and the peece of fuch a bore is hardly fo good as a Pistoll! feethat the pan be tight, and the touch-hole vnworne; for if it bee otherwise, the one will fcatter and lose the powder, the other will blow backe in the Souldiers face, or elferecoyle and doe greater mischiefe, and on the contrary part, if the hole be too little, the powder will want passage, and the piece will hardly go off, without much toyle and great loffe of labour: fee that the breech be strong and close, all the screwes and pinnes about it fast and fure, the scowring stick straight, round, smooth, and headed with a rammer of yron futable to the bore of the peece: let the Cocks and Trickers be nimble to goe and come; for as concerning Seares they are vtterly out of date, and the Inconveniences are found in our daily experience: for vpon enery motion or touch of the Souldiers garments, they are apt to make the piece flie off before there is occasion, killing sometimes him that marcheth behind, sometimes him that is before, sometimes fets fire on him that beares it, and fometimes wounds his Officer that comes to give him direction; so that for these and the like mischiefs they are vtterly forbidden, neither is the charge of a Tricker greater then that of a Scare; and who foeuer shall bee drawne to reformation, there wil be found little or no ods at all in the bargain, only the stupidity and blockishnesse of our ignorant & wilfull Plebeians is so great, that but with huge difficultie they can neuer be brought to relish any alteration, especially if there be but the value of one penny betwixt them and their first custome, or that any debausht fellow, who hath either runne from his Colours, beene an vnder-flaue to a Sutlers boy, and now for his last refuge keeps a Tipling house in the Countrey for men of his equall qualitic: If he(I fay) will but affirme what they furmife, it is not the wifedome of Nestor, nor the experience of Casar, no not Apollos Oracle which is able to change any part of their resolution: to this I have been a pregnant witnesse, and at this I have often smiled, chiefly when I have seene some of more eminent condition, how well they could be pleased to be flattered in their owne, yet a false opinion: But to returne againe to the arming of this Souldier, he shall have for his right hand a handsome Rest of Ash or other light wood, with an yron pike in the nether end, and an halfe hoope of yron aboue to lay the Mulquet in when hee rests it, and double strong strings shall be fastened necre thereunto to put ouer the left arme, when at any time the Souldier shall have occasion to traile the same. Now as touching the length of these Rests, there is not any certaine quantitie thereof; for how soener generally they are foure foot and vpward, yet they should be according to the stature of the partie which beares them, carrying the Musquet so euen, that hee may in a comely manner discharge at a leuell without very much bending either F 2

36



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND IVDICIOUS EMANVELL

SCROOP Lord SCROOP of Bolton and Lo: President of the North.

#### THE ARGYMENT.

Of the Arming of Pikes.



Ince (my Lord) you are by his Maiesties fauor the Viceroy or President of your Country, on whom all these Military actions depend, I cannot be perswaded but any thing which comes cloathed with this Title (and carrying the Badge of experimented Truth) shall find from you a noble respect; for I know not any to reward vertue but vertue; nor any in these secure times that will looke on a Souldier

but he that hath a daily vie of his knowledge; if fuch you Lordship looke for; this questionles will not hurt you, and how ever it want something that you defire, yet in the volume you shall find enough to give an honest satisfaction.

The course to which I am drawne in this Epistle is the manner of arming the Pike, which being the first and most principall weapon which guardethan Armie, may challenge from enery Commander the seucarest respect in adorning thereof, I doe not meane the greater & more eminent fort of persons which serue with this weapon, but only the prinate and common Souldier, such as make not up one Fyle or one Ranke, but sashion whole Bodyes and Grosses of what quantitie seuer.

The persons for this weapon are to be chosen out of the better sort of men, such as are tall, comely, active and valiant, yet in this choyce you are not so constantly to stand upon proportion and out side as discreetly to consider the settled inclination of every Souldier and to what armes by his owne nature he is principally adicted. In which Inquisition, that you may be sure not to taile, it is not amisse for every Captaine to apply

his men vnto fundry weapons and to that which he feeth him approach with the greatest facility and delight, in that to stay him and incourage him; for so shall the Commander be best served and the Souldier grow skilfull with the least amaze and trouble. When therefore you have attay. ned a body answerable to the vie and vertue of this weapon, you shall then arme him after this manner; vpon his head hee shall weare a good and sufficient Spanish Morian well lined within with a quitted Cap, of strong huswives linnen, for Buckram which is the vfuall lyning is too course and galleth the Souldiers head, as also it is too stiffe and vnplyable. by which meanes it will not quilt like the other; the eare plats shall bee lined also, and with a string be made fast under his neather chap, which will keepe the Morian constantly voon his head and breed leffe trouble to the Souldier in the heate of encounters; The auncient custome of arming the Pikemans head hath beene with a Burgonet, but the inconvenience thereof hath beenefound, for when the Burgonet is made fast vnto the head, if in a charge the Enemie hit vpon the hye, broad Creft which goeth thwart the crowne of the head (with the push of his Pike) then it is ten to one but hee either breaketh the Souldiers necke or at least ouerthroweth him to the ground, or if to faue the hazard the Burgonet be loofe or the string vnder the chappe breake, then he disarmeth his head and so leaueth him in greate danger at every encounter; And hence it is that all Burgoners are disallowed and only the Morian or close round cappe of steele with a small welt on the top thought meete for the vie of this Souldier.

About his necke he shall have a large, easie and well compast Gorget arming as close to his doublet as is possible (provided it pinch not) and ouer this Gordget vpon his body he shall cast a payre of Curaces, that is to say the breast plate and backe part; which Curaces shall be of a nimble and good mould, and fashioned according to the nearest, easiest, and fittest apparell which is for a mans body, for though the variation of our apparell be Infinite and without either reason, measure or order, yet it is not meete that armes should bee so changeable, but that rather a man should frame his apparell to his Armes, then his Armes to his apparell for needle and thrid will doe the one, but fire and the hammer is required to the other; these Curaces must be at least hye Pike proofe for that is the allowance of our Nation; to bee greater is but burd'nous to the Souldier and bringeth neitheir ease nor profit; as for the leathers and Buckles with which informer times this Armor was fastned about the Souldier, they shall now be neglected, and instead thereof euery seucral member of the Armour shall be made fast about them with Claspes of Iron, hooked or pinned rogether either with hookes or cleft pinnes of Brafle or Iron; for the leathers at every encounter are soone cut in pieces, but these neuer, at the neather part of his Breast-plate hee shall have a payre of faire lardge Taces; reuited in fundry loynts and made in fuch true compasse that they may arme close all the Belly and forepart of the Souldier euen downe to his midde thigh; vpon his shoulders hee

fhall

ter

shall have a large payre of well moulded Pouldrons which shall arme him from the top of the Shoulder down to the Elbow. But as, touching the Vantbrace (which armeth from the elbow to the hand) they are not greatly materiall in this case, neither are they respected or required in our Musters. It is true that the Pouldrons and Taces are many times like-wise neglected, the first because it hindreth a little the vie of the arme, the latter because of the burthen and some hiderances in swift marches, but in as much as they are still required by all our supreame Commanders and that the benefit farre exceedeth the trouble, therefore in this discourse I must give them all possible allowance; Lastly all these sense rall parts of Armor is rather to bee of a Russer or blacke collour then mil'd, for they are least perceived in the night, are fittest for secret Ambuscadoes and preserveth it selfe the longest time from Russ and putre-saction.

In his right hand he shall have a stronge, straight, yet nimble Pike made of a well growne Ashe, and headed with a Pike of steele, being also armed with plates of Iron downeward from the head at least toure or fixe foote deepe vpon the staffe: the Pike shall beeinlength full fifteene foote besides the head, It hath beene an auncient Custome to arme Pikes in the mid'st (Iust in that place where the Souldier shall carry it when hee either marcheth or shouldereth it ) either with cloathe, veluet, filke or other stuffe (either according to fancy or in obferuation of the Captaines Colours) for the space of eighteene Inches or thereabouts, but by reason of some suggestyons against it, as nourishing of the worme, fretting the Pike with dust and such like; it is now not fo much respected, yet in that I know it is comely to the eye, and fome helpe to the younge Souldier in shewing him the true place where he shall carry his Pike in Marching, Shouldering, Sloaping and the like, I will therefore leave it to the discretion of every Commander, assuring my selfe that how soeuer curiossity may repine, yet notwithstanding Iudgement may make it tollerable.

The Pikeman shall have by his left side a good, sharpe and broad Sword, (of which the Turkye or Bilboe are the best) the length of the blade being a full yard and one inch, the hilt of Basket sashion, round and well compast, the scaberd of strong leather, chapt with Iron, and to carry his Sword either Girdle & Hangers of strong leather, or broad Bautrickes of the same substance, but Hangers are the best if they be side and large, especially when hee shall come to receive the encounter or charge of Horse, where couching his body downe low with the bending of his Pike, the Bautrick girdle (being loose) is apt to fall (by the poyze of the Sword) in a troublesome manner before him, so as he shall neither readily draw it out, nor simbly vie his Pike by reason that his Sword will hange dangling before him. There be some that except against the persixed and certaine length of the Sword, alleadgeing that all weapons should be accommodated to the fitnesse of the person, (allowing the shorter arme the longer Sword and the longer arme the shorter

rer weapon) and not be bound to a generall disaduantage : but however there doth appeare some reason herein, yet is the distinction somewhat too nice, for if the short arme bee allowed the long sword, will ner the long arme (who hath equall choyce) bee owner of the like weapon; where is then the short armes advantage ? and so againe by arguing from the contrary you shall find, that no difference in body ought to make a difference in weapons, but there should ever remaine a constant president, although now and then it may be evaryed at the Commanders discretion, and suer, then that fize formerly expressed, there cannot be a better limmit.

Lastly if to the Pikemans Morion be fastned a strong ring of yron, and to the right fide of his backepiece below his girdle, an yron hooke to hangethe Merion vpon, it will be a great case for the Souldier, and a nimble Cariage in the time of long Marches; for there is not any thinge more grieuous to a manthen ouer heating of his head, neither haue I at any time found a quicker cause for sicknes and distemper. Thus I have deliuered the most substantiall and perfectest way of armeing an ordinary Pikeman or common Souldier, fuch as may passe borh ours or any other indifferent Muster. And though busic Apprehensions might find out many other curioffities and niceties to adde to this relation, yet in as much as I know they will but rather offend Patience, then better Know.

ledge I am willing to let them remaine still in the bottome of their owne Ocean, and if any man will find them let him found for them, for mine owne part I only ferue Truth, and to her I dare bringe no Sacrifice but a constant Experience.

The end of the first Decad.

with the contract and the land between the land and the language and the land and t

with the strain entry the strain with the strain of the strain of the



## THE RIGHT HONORABLE HIS GOOD LORD EDWARD

SVTTON LORD DVDLEY of Dudley-caltle.

THE ARGVMENT. Of the Souldiers Oath and Distribution.

Haue (my Lord) in the former Decad intreated of the choice and election of the common Souldier belonging to the Infantrie or foot Companies, and how to arme both the Musquet and Pike, which are all the weapons generally vsed in our Moderne warres, and of which indeed hee is onely capable: for to other weapons doe belong other Ceremonies, and they are either put into the hands of infe-

riour Officers, or else vnto Gentlemen of Companies, as the Partizan, the Halbert, the Target, and the like. It now resteth that I proceed to the other duties of a common Souldier, of which none is more eminent and necessarie then his Oath; for it not onely bindeth him to Obedience. which is the principall linke in all martiall Discipline; but is also such a pledge betwixt God and his Conscience, that whensoeuer the deuill or malice affaults him, it like a strong Bulwarke stands betweene, and beats

the battery backe even to the seducers destruction.

When therefore an Armie is raifed, it then resteth that an Oath be administred to the common Souldier for his fidelitie, which the Antients found exceeding necessarie in divers respects, for although the severitie of the Lawes were a Bit sharp enough & strong enough to curbe and restrain the furic of any wild or vntamed spirit, either from Disloyalty, Difobedience, or any treacherous Practise whatsoener: yethath experience found out that the Soldier who by a continual familiaritie with affright and dangers, is growne adventurous, hardie, and valiant, and by gazing death in the face at every houre and season, and almost in every attempt

which he either doth or fuffers, so that hee reputes him no more but a word, a toy, or an idle shadow, and will many times with as great alacritic daunce and runne post to the gallowes, as Vertue would flie to a glorious action, that therefore another chaine must bee found out. whose linkes being smoother, smaller, and more cunningly and closely compact together, though they doe not bruise, hurt, or nip, yet they should binde faster, stronger, and with greater assurance, then any terror of death or bodily torment what soeuer; and this was an Oath, which calling God to be a witnesse of his Loyaltie and Faith, doth so knit and make fast his Conscience to an honest meaning, that having any true sparke of Christianitie within him, no motion can arise to infringe or violate the fame, but presently his Conscience hath Arguments to suppresse it, and his Resolution as a most valiant Chiese, tramples and treads it downe as a thing pestilent and noysome to his Fame and Honour, for howfoeuer a Souldier feares not death, yet hee expects Ioy after death. and whatfoeuer thrustes betwixt him and that hope, is his mortall enemic.

The words of this Oath are various and incertaine, nor is there any constant President thereof, but it hath its limitation, according to the purposes of the Generall, and the necessitie or occasions of the action, being contained in a certaine Booke or Scedule of Articles which expresse all the Souldiers duties in the Warre both towards God, his King, the Generall, and every other Officer or Chiefe, commaunding within the Armie, all which (when the Souldiers are mustered, and gathered together) shall in solemne wise bee openly read vnto them by the publique Notarie of the Armie, which sinished hee shall speake vnto them thus, or to the like purpose.

Bill the same, let him now either openly refuse to bee a Souldier, or else hold up his hand, and say after mee: All these which have beene read, we hold sacred and good, and will valiantly and trucly fulfill the same. So helpe us God, and his divine Word. Amen.

This is the effect and manner of the Souldiers oath, and it ought to be performed with the greatest Solemnitie that may be, and in the prefence of the Generall, the Lieutenant Generall, or the Master de Campo, at the least. This oath hath sometimes been deliuered without any repetition of the latter words by the Souldiers, but onely by holding vp of their hands, which is as much and as forcible: as if they should lay their hands on a Booke, for it is the consent which maketh strong the obligation, and bindeth the Conscience both before God and man.

The Souldier being thus fworne, it remaineth then to make a true distribution or vse of them; In which it is to be vnderstood, that all Soul-

diers

diers are of two forts, as either of the Cavallerie, which is feruing on horsebacke, or of the Infantery, which is seruing on foot, and betweene these there hath bin held a tedious difference touching prioritic of place, and precedencie in estimation, some allowing it to the Horsman, saying He is more worthie, more puissant, more swift, more dexter, and more seruiceable, that a Horseman may at his pleasure be a footman, but a Footman not (A converso) at his pleasure be a Horseman, that the Horseman is more fit for all forts of imployments, that he discoucreth things a farre off, and fubdueth whatfoeuer is neere at hand, that he performeth three duties at one instant, namely that of the Launce, that of the Sword, and that of the Fire, which no Footman can doe, that he hathalwayes a Gentlemans place, and a Gentlemans entertainment, that for the most part he hath euer some one or other attendant, man or boy, to wait vpon him, and to conclude, that no Footman whatfoeuer but holdeth it a degree of Aduancement to be made an Horseman. Now there are others which affirme, that the Footman is more noble, faying, that he is as nimble as the other is puissant; that he can with leffe difficultie answer an Allarum or a charge, that hee marches as furely (though not as speedily) that he is able either to make good or affaile all Affaults and Breaches, that he can scale wals and Towers, beat Trenches, Mines and Ditches, and indeed fet his foot and conquer where no Horfe is able to approach; that he first possesseth Townes, Cities and strong holds, and onely from his bountie giveth to the Horfman the benefit of his Quarter; that howfocuer the Horseman be much swifter then he, yet when they come into any Straits, as Paces, Lanes, Mountaines, or the like, that then the Horseman is in a fatall and desperat danger, if the Footman make not his pasfage good; that the Footman in his trauel, though he cannot boaft of the Horsemans ease, yet when he comes to his journeys end, hee wants all the Horsemans trouble, for hee hath no Forrage to seeke out, no Stable roome to prouide, nor no horse to dresse, hee faith, that multiplicitie of attendants, are multiplicitie of charges, and when he drawes any fuch thing vnto him, it is for his pleafure, not necessitie: and to conclude, the charge of a Horseman is so great, that it containeth the valew of tenne Foot, yet one Foot according to the computation of all manner of imployments is as auaileable and necessarie as any Horseman. Thus they argue one against the other; but the resolution of the doubt is, that the greatest number or principall strength whereof the armie doth consist, that to it the prioritie of place is to be given : and hence it comes, that with vs here in England, both in the old & first times, when our Browne-Bill men and Archers made up the Body, strength and perfection of the armie, and that the Horfe were but small handfuls, and now in these prefent daies when the Pike and Musquet are the very matter on which our Armies doe confift, the Footmen hath the chiefest honour and glory of. our Conquests, and the first place or ranke is so duely his, that our Kings and Generals in the ancient battels have beene seene (when the Armies haue ioyned) to allight from their horses, and put themselves into the midst

midst of the maine battell of Foot : But on the contrary part, in France. where the people are much more nice and delicate, and not so ableas ours to indure long and tedious Marches, they doe for the most partal mount themselues on horsebacke: so that their Armies have and do ever most consist of Horse, and the Horseman is he that hath the greatest pre-

heminence amongst them.

Hauing thus reconciled this disputation betweene the Canallarie and Infantrie, it is the great Souldiers Office to distribute his men into these diuifions according to the necessitie of his affaires, and the abilitie of mens persons, appointing some to be Horsmen, and some to be footmen: which done, he shall subdeuide his Horsemen according to his abilitie in Armes, the custome of Countries, and the accommodation of the place wherein they are to ferue, making fome Launciers, and fome Piftollers, some Light-Horsemen, and some Carbines, for all these are necessary in an Army, having their distinct and severall places, severall Service, and severall times and feafons, as shall bee shewed more largely when I come to intreat of their feuerall subjects.

The Footmen likewise shall also bee subdivided according to their talnesse in stature, their strength of body, and nimblenesse in action, making some Pike-men, some Halberdiers, and some Targetiers, some Musquets, some Bastard-Musquets, and some Harquebusses, according as your ability of Armes are able to prouide, for although it were to bee wisht that all the shot of the Infantry might bee full Musquets, yet if the quantitie be wanting, you must then supply it as neere the qualitie as can be, and rather then leave a man vnfurnished, let him have Bastard Musquet, Harquebusse, nay the old Englishmans lost weapon, a good strong

Bowe and Arrowes.

DEPTH.

Thus I have shewed your Lordship in this briefe Epistlethe effect and manner of the Souldiers Oath, and the generall distribution of his person, wherein if I have not handled every poynt with that exact fulnesse which a diligent capacitie would require, it must bee conceived that my iourney is long and intricate, and I shall touch at one and the same thing in divers places; fo that what soever is darke or obscure here, shall receive sufficient light in another Epistle: Bee your Lordship then pleased (in whom I have ever found an honourable respect, and to whom I have euer been bound for many noble fauours) to looke ouer these rude-difgested lines; and when they have spoken as much as belongs to their melfage, thinke they would onely intimate this more, that the Writer loues you, and that love shall ever make him ready to serve you.

brown spillshammer in 1-15 and best state of the spillsham to the state of the spillsham to the spillsham to



# TOTHERIGHT HONORABLEDED VVARD LORD

esting very arrange of moi. N contract V To Zee wither thall bed thinks on they arrange the best of the contract of the contra

#### THE ARGVMENT.

#### Of the Sentinell or Centinel.

Auing (my Lord) in my former Epistles passed ouer the Important Circomstances depending vpon a Millitary professor, even to the distribution and devission of the Armie, I will now descend to the severall Offices, Ranks and places depending on the same, of which the meanest and lowest in all the Bundle of Common Souldiers (though exceeding necessary and important) is the Sentinell or outmost

watchman of the Armie, who indeed is called the wall of the Campe, for in the Carefulnesse of his Eie and Vnderstanding consisteth much of the generall safety, he is bound vnto the lowest services, and to the performance of all inferior and vnder duties, and although hee bee of the greatest number, yet is he of the least regard, and receives the least entertainement, neither doth any ignorance excuse him, but even the first houre hee commeth either into the Field or into Garison hee is liable to this Office and duty, which to expound in briefe words is this.

After the Corps de guard (which is a Squadron of some five and twentie or thirty persons) is drawne fourth (whether it be in Campe or in Garison) & placed where the Enemy is aptest to make his approaches, presently the Scrieant, Corporall, or other Officer which hath Command of the Corps de guard shall out of the common Souldiers drawe his Sentinell, & conduct him thirty or sorty paces from the Corps de guard into that passage or way by which the enemie or others are likely to come, and there he shall place him with his Piece charged (for it is intended that Sentinels for the most part should be all Shot) his Rest fixed, the Musqet levelled, the Match cocked and the Pan guarded, commanding

manding him not to suffer any Creature whatsoeuer to passe by, but with a cunning and diligent eie to looke about, and if any come within his view or knowledge, first to call with a loud voyce Qui vala or who goes there? then if the other replie A Friend or the like, the Sentinell fall presently command him to stand without approaching a foote farther which if he refuse to obey the Sentinell may then shoote and kill him. but if he stand, then shall the Sentinell call aloud Corporall, Corporall; to which the Corporal shall replie Holla, and so presently come away and with his Sword drawne receive the word from the passenger what soe. uer hebe: thus shall the Sentinell with all carefull diligence warch and not suffer any man passe by him or to come within such a distance as the partie may affailethe Sentinell or take aduantage either of his weapon or person, vpon paine of most grieuous punishment; neither shall bee slacke any duty or quit his placetill either his Corporall come and relieue him (which according to the danger of the place or the strength of the Com. pany is a longer or a leffer time) or elfe that by fome apparent danger he shooteth off his Piece and so giveth to the rest an alarme. The Sentinell is a man offo meane trust that in our Armies he is not credited with the watch-word, but only like the Roman Goofe must cry out and exclaime when the Capitall is in danger, he is a man that must wrastle and out. facce any extreamiry, not respecting the cruelty of any season, nor leaveing hit Station either for Frost, Snow, Haile, Thunder or Tempest.

These Sentinels in case of ordinary attendance as in quiet Garisons or where the Enemie is farre offremooued, there they may stand single and alone, but if it be in a Seidge, or in Campes where the Enemie lies neare one to another, there by all meanes they shall stand double, that is to fay two, one a little distance from the other, yet in such fort that they may discerne one another, and be affifting each to other, vsing all the diligence that may be both of Eies and Eeares, and being both as filent as the dead of night it felfe. If the weather be violently cold and piercing, one of them may walke whilft the other doth watch: if it bee extreame darke one of them may with his eare lie & liften to the ground whilst the other lookes about to see if any thing doe approach him, and thus one may helpe the other, so that nothing can passe without the verdge of their knowledge. Now if it happen (as many times it doth) that there be Sentinell beyond Sentinell one standing at least thirty or forty paces nearer to the Enemie then the other; then shall that which standerh nearest to the Enemy be a single Sentinell, the other shall bee double, and when the fingle Sentinell perceiveth any approach of troops or companies, then shall he retire to the double to declare his discouery; and when all three perceiveth it then they may give the alarme. And herein is to be noted that all Settinels in generall what soener they bee, ought not in any wife to acknowledge any man of what degree or qualitie soeuer the be: were it his Captaine or any other Officer of the Campe, but to keepe him out at a full distance till the word bee re-Muffqer Lenelled, the Must

If vpen mine affertion of the low estate & meane quality of an ordinary Sentinellit be demanded whether al Gentlemen of Companies be viter ly excluded from this place and dury, I answere no: for in some cases it is a matter of fo great confequece that indeed none but Gentlemen ought to be made Sentinels as when it is voon the face of the enemie, or when Camps, Trenches, or Mines ioyne fo necre one to another, that contrary factions may (as it were) discourse and talke one vnto another, each striuing to circumuent and cut off the Sentinels and Guards which belong to each other, in this case both for the enabling of their Judgments and knowledge, to firew their obediece & willingnes to preuerall mischieues that might threaten or disturbe the Army, and to give vnto the world a iust & due proofe of their magnanimitie and valor, they not only obtrud and thrust forward themselves to this service, but also make earnest and great suite to attaine it, knowing that the action it selfe deserves infinite praise, & the danger requires all the absolute parts of a Souldier; as wisdome, courage, forefight, care and prevention; these Sentinels are called of some, Perdues or lost Sentinels, of others Fortorne or Desperate Sentinels, and they stand sometimes on horsebacke and sometimes on foote as the convenientnes of the place & fitnes of the ground will allow, & he must carry himselfe with that secresse & discretion that neither eye nor eare may challenge his aboad, for should the enemy have any inckling or perseverance of his standing, it were an action almost impossible either to faue his ownelife or make his retrait with fafety, for thus was the Spanish Captaine Salazer cut off by the troops of Francis the French King the night before he retired from the Towne of Landresie; and thus have divers in like case perished when Indiscretion bath ruled them; the most memorable things which these forlorne Sentinels are to attend, is the affaires of the enemie, what preparation hee maketh for fecret fallies, In what manner his Troops lodge, and whether he intendeth any fecret remoue or goeth about to dislodge his Armie. This Sentinell may not in any wife have the word, because of the great perill in which he standeth of furprifing & being taken Prifoner, whereby the word may be inforced from him and his whole party brought within the compasse of most certaine destruction, yet notwithstanding although the word be detained from him, it is very convenier that he have a different counter-figne by which he may be knowne and received when at any time he hapneth to returne, and againe if he doc happen to come off with fafety, he must be wondrous carefull that all his relations and informations be most certaine & true, for to be either fo far transported with feare that he cannot distinguish sounds; or so dull with amazement that his eies cannot deferne constant and cleere obiects, by which meanes he gives a confused Intelligence, there is nothing but dishonor which will redound to himlelfe, and loffe & hinderance to those vnto whom he would tender alhis bestendeauors, & like Considius who (imployed in these affaires) by a mistake of his eyes and bringing vnto Casar a false and contrary message, made in one moment a shipwracke of that Fame and Reputation, which

he had beene thirty yearesin gaining both under Sylla and Craffus: for all other ordinary Sentinels of which I spake in the former part of this E piftle, being thus but in the first degree of a common Souldier; thereis from them expected no more but common duties, neither is there any more truft or affiance in them then necessity inforceth, but if he be a man of valor, wildome, apprehension, care & observatio, shewing in himselfe an abilitie both to doe and indure, there is no doubt but his Captaine (except he be too much vnthankefull) will take notice of his vertues and quickly advance him to better estimation. The Sentinell and whole corps de guard shall march to their place of watch armed at all pans according to the right belonging to the weapon he carieth, and their relieuing those which had the watch before them, shall performe their du. ties withall secresie and silence. Of these Sentinels there would be at least twenty in euery Squadron: for vpon many occasions many are let forth. and being but relieued three or foure times in a night, yet euery one will haue worke enough and no mans hand shal be empty. It hath beene an argument with some that the Rounder passing within eight or ten paces of the Sentinell, that he may passe by with a Salute only, without giving the word, & that the Sentinell may permit and fuffer the same, but it is an erronious opinion and doth not agree with good discipline, for hee that is one of the eies of the Armie and veterly fordidden during his time of watch to acknowledg any creature whatfoeuer, whether he come from the Campe or from the Towne, from the friend or from the enemie, for wayes & passages in the night doe not distinguish persons, he that stands to guard stands to suspect, and the tolleration of one escape may draw on a million.

If the formost single sentinell shall stay any passenger, he shall neither call his Corporall nor demand of him the word, but having staid him, he shall bring him to the double Sentinell and they shall call the Corporal who shall receive it. To conclude this Epistle, it hath beene the manner of the Spanish discipline in their warrs to let the Sentinell haue the word, so that he doth receive it both of the Rounders and other passengers ; but how dangerous & hurtfull it hath beene vnto them, that exployt of Sir Reger Williams (of noble memory) and Sir Martin Skinke (when they attempted their passage to Venlow) will most worthily witnes, where in stead of giuing the word they tooke the word and flew the Sentinels, and made their passage good even to the Tent of the Generall (the noble Duke of Parma) whom they made flie out of his bedde in his shirt, and had they not had other ends which did guid them, it was supposed at that instant they might have taken him prisoner; This I shew that to this inferior place should be attributed no greater priviledge then is convenient, for being the meanest amongst the meanest, it is enough if their eiesand cares doetheir duties, for their tongues it is too nimble an engine, and should be laden with no more poyze then it might beare without either trouble or danger.



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE HEN RIE SOMERSET LORD

Apparant to the Earledome of Worcester.

#### THE ARGVMENT.

# Of the Rounder.

Oft honourd and worthy Lord, so great is the renowne of your thrice noble father, and so precious
vnto me the consideration of that ancient, excellent
and happy stocke from whence you take your deriuation, that were there nothing in me but Dulnesse
& Lead; yet I could not but kindle in my heart some
sparks of admiration, and willing slames of affectionate loue to your service, so oft as I read the story

of your forefathers excellencies in the goodly Table of your owne liuing vertues. Be pleafed then noble Sir(to whose blood I am not verterly a stranger) to cast your eye ouer this my rough weake labour, & though it be a descant set to the Drumme, and not to the Violl, yet I hope it shal beat so tuneably into every right and perfit courage, that by the working essects thereof many shall be drawne from their neglect of martiall Intendments, and my selfe both revived and rewarded when I shall give my heart some hope that I have express the love and dutie I beare to your Name and Honour.

The word Ronda, which both in Spanish and Italian doth signise a Rounder, is taken in the plurall number for a certaine select company of Gentlemen, or well deserving Souldiers, who for the merit of their Service (express in their valour and obedience, and the honest and faithfull performance of those inferiour duties which are liable to the first entrance of every common Souldier) have been advanced by their Captaine from the title of a common man to be a Gentleman of a Companie, the priviledge whereof doth not onely free and discharge him from the humble and meaner duties, as that of the Sentinell, and the like, but

H

doth also exhaust and raise vp his entertainement, therein making a difference betweene them and the vulgar persons, and these be called Gentlemen Rounders, or Gentlemen of the Round, whose dutie and office is to visit the Corps du guards, the Sentinels, Sconts & Watches at sundry hours in the night, to cause them to observe the lawes, statutes, and ordinances of the armie, and to see whether they bee vigilant and ready so as no surprise, Sally, private Inivry, or other secret Stratagem be wrought or personmed against the body of the Armie; and for this cause they walke continually round about from Sentinell to Sentinell, and from Guard to Guard. If it be in a Garrison round about the walles of the towne, and if in a Campe, then round about the fortification thereof either within or without, and through every passage which approacheth to the same, by meanes of which circular course or round walke which they undertake, they have the name of Rounders, or a Gentleman of the Round.

These are in the immediate next degree before the Sentinell, and how. focuer the Captaine hath power in his owne company to dispence with places and duties of this nature; yet in true & seuere discipline this place was first allotted for yong Gentlemen of good Blood and discent, who desirous to aduance their fortunes in the warres, haue (for pay) thrust themselues under the commands of sundry Captaines, for whose encouragement and respect both this place and dutie, and an advancement of some greater pay (then that to a common Souldier) was instituted and ordeined; and questionles there is great reason there should be some distinction betweene them and the vulgar: And although for knowledge fake it is sometimes a glory vnto them to stand Sentinell, yet it must bee out of their voluntary motion: for no constraint ought to inforce them thereunto. These Gentlemen as they are Rounders are trusted with the Word, which no Sentinel may be; they are the leaders or Captains of Files in the company wherin they ferue, and may challenge the most honorable places in all Marches, & fuch as are the most likely to come to the first encounter of the enemy; they may challenge now and then entertainmet at the Captains own table, and being without disparagement, of cleare blood and vertue, euen the General himselfe should not contemne them; and doubtles, these extraordinary graces doe infinitely oblige thankfull minds; and in cases of Mutiny or any other private disorder, doe much strengthen the Commander, for being right Gentlemen, & of sweet conuerfation, they will cuer have in the company some to depend vpon the, so that howsoeuer mischiefes runne, they will commonly have the greater, assuredly the better part to adhere vnto them; and indeed it ought to be their study, that as they are respected aboue the vulgar, so they should excell the vulgar in the vertues of Fidelity, Valour, Score cy, Patience, Abstinence and Continence, and as others ferue for gaine, so they must ferue for Glorie and advancement.

Now to descend to the particular duty of the Rounder, he ought first to set the watch either in company or in squadron, whether it be in Garison or in the field, & to march with his fellowes in Armes to the place where the

the Corps du guard is appointed, and there to place himselfe in a comely and filent manner till the Corporall have fet out all his Sentinels, and that the first round is gone about, which ought to be performed by the Captaine of the Watch himselfe or some other supreme Officer, then after fome small pause, the Captain, Lieutenant, Serieant, or Corporall which hath the charge of the Corps du guard, shall call foorth two Gentlemen Rounders (for it is to be understood that they ought cuer for the most part to go double and not fingle) and to thefe in very filent manner hee shall deliuer the Word, giving them great charge of care and fecrefic therein, and fo forthwith they shal passe away voon the Round, with such ordinary Armes as they viually carry, which for the most part is the Pike, for that is accounted the Gentlemans weapon. Now being on voon the Round, they must with a very curious eye, and a quicke eare obserue any cause of danger bee it never so light, they must take a survey of all Rampiers, bulwarks, trenches & mines whatfoeuer they encounter with, and behold if they can perceive any thing dangerous about the, & according to the brightnes or obscurnes of the arre, so must their vigilance be augmented; for if it be clear & light, then must their eies be their best Intelligecers; if it be cloudy, dark & vnperceiuable, then must their eares inform them, and they must divers times stand still and listen whether they can heare any speech or conference, and observe of what consequence & value the words are; also if they can heare any trampling of horses feet, any clashing of armors, or if they can differn any glimple of fire or sparklings of Matches, and the like: any of which when they perceive, they shall cither conceale themselves till it approch them that they may discover it, or elfe draw as neere vnto it as they can with conuenience, and if they find eminent danger, either retire and give notice, or els raife the alarme; but if it be in case of equality, then by calling & receiving the Word, give paffage, or otherwise for want therof take them prisoners, & bring them to the Guard; but vpon any refistance, then it is lawfull to kill as being an enemy, but not otherwise. Thus passing along vpon the Round, when they come vnto the Sentinels, they must make their approches with all the art and cunning that can be deuised, and with all silence stealing neere vnto them, watch whether they be afleed or whether they stand carelesly out of order, & not vpon their guard: they shall by perswasion, intilement or infinuation trie if they can come within them, if they can take their weapons from them, or if they will admit them to passe by without calling their Corporall (as knowing that they are Gentlemen of their Company, and of their familiar acquaintance) or the like careles escapes, which they shall put to the vttermost triall, then they shal presently call the Corporal, to whom declaring their negligence and offence, another Seminel shall be forthwith placed, and the offending one caried to the Guard shall by his Superior officer receive severe & condigne punishment. The reasons of euery which attempt I forbeare to fet downe, because they would but oucrburden fo short an Epistle, and no man (I hope) that shall happen vpon this discourse, will have so shallow an understanding as not to conceive how H 2

how dangerous the least of these escapes may prooue to the body of an Army. It hath bin a question whether the Gentlemen Rounders may wink at these offences, and only by giuing sharp admonishment to the Sential, or peraduenture a drie blow or two concease it from his superior officer; but it is most certaine that they may not, but in dutie ought truely to reueale vnto him all materials things whatsoeuer which hath hapned vnto them ingoing of the Round: But if in the Round they find all things well and to their contentment, and that the Sentinels are vigilant and carefull, so as nothing can escape or passe by them, then when the Sentinel shall say Quiva la, or Who goes there? the Rounder shall reply, A Friend: when the Sentinell shall say Stand, the Rounder shall answer, Call your Corporals; then when the Corporals approacheth, the Rounder shall in his care deliuer the word with all secrecy, which being true, the Corporals shall say, Passe along; and so the Rounder shall depart to the next Sentinell, and in that maner from Sentinell to Sentinell till he have gone round about, and be come

to his owne Corps du guard againe.

If the Rounders in passing the Round shall encounter with other Rounders, then they which first discouer, shall first call, and first challenge the word; but if both discouer at one instant, & as it were call in one moment, then they shall enter changeably both give and receive the word, that is to fay that Rounder which receiveth the word, his copanion to the contrary partic halgiue the word, so that on both sides the word shalbe both given and taken, one of each party having the fwords point at his bosome, for who foeuer receiveth the word, must draw his sword, and he that delivereth it, must tender against it his bosome; for the maner of the encounter it is thus; the first discouerer calleth Qui-va-la, the other reply The Round; the first answereth the Round also: then they meet a little distance asimder, and hee that first discouered, receives the word, and his Companion gives it, and so a converse. Now if the Rounders be sent out so early in the night that they meet the Captaine of the watch (who should go the first Round) then of him they must take notice, & both one after another deliver him the word, and so doing reverence, passe along. To conclude and finish vp this dutie of the Rounder, if they shall in their round meet either with the Generall of the Army, or the Gouernour of the garrison vndisguised and like himselfe in all parts both of person and attendants, so that without excuse they must know him, then to him they shal give the work also, but to no other whatsoeuer (more then such as are before specified) no not to his owne Captaine, nor to the Captaine of the watch, after the first Round is performed: and of these Rounders there must bee at least two or more in euery Squadron, who performing this dutie twice or thrice every night, or as necessity shall requier, will no doubt both keepe the Watches in good order, & bring much safetie to the Armie. In some places they have Round houses, where the Captaine of the watch and all the Rounders together remaine all night, who setteth out his Rounders each halfe houre or houre, according to the space of the Round.

## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE IOHN LORD DARCY OF

the North, his very good

#### THE ARGUMENT.

#### Of the Clerke and Harbenger.

He great Respects which many Ties both of Blood and Fauour haue bound me daily to acknowledge to your Lordship, are as so many alarumes to awaken me (in the depth of my Meditation) and to pronounce vnto me how vnworthy I were if in this Cattalogue of Martiall designes I should omit the memory of your name and Honor, I doe know the Studie you affect, and when it shall please either

God or the Kingdome to call you to the practife, I doubt not but there will be found in you such a Readinesse of Will, and such an ability both of Person and Courage, that all the lost or consumed Epitaphs of your noble Progenitors shall as new Texted Records be read a farre off in your Honorable disposition, till when I beseech your Lordshipe Anchor one houre vpon this Epistle; and howsoeuer the words be roughly and plainely thrust together, yet shall the matter give you content, for it brings with it a witnesse of certaine knowledge, and the mind of a writer which without flattery will ever honor and love you.

The Clerke of a Band in a Company of well disciplin'd Souldiers (being a man worthily worthy of the place and Office which hee holdeth) I cannot fo fitly compare to any thing as to an honest Steward of a noble and well gouernd Family, for their faithfull cares and services are knit and made vp almost of one and the same Members; each being drawne by his Industrie, fore-sight and providence to have a care of his Commanders honor and prosit, and of the weale and good estate of all those which have any dependance vpon them.

It is true that in the Clerke of a Band is not required much Souldiery or Martiall understanding, for he is rather to bee a pen-man then a Sword-

Sword-man, yet by all meanes no Coward, for that flauish feare is a great weakener of honesty and a discouerer of deceitfull paths which he must by all meanes auoyd) it teacheth him how to flatter the world. to disesteeme all the lawes of true friendship, to addulterate only with his owne pleasures; and to make of himselse, (to himselse) both a Mistris and a prodigall Seruant, he that feares to die can neuer bee Master of a good Conscience, and when that is hackneyd upon either by Couctous. nes, or Pride, there is no respect of persons but all things are sweete which bring him gaine, though in the vildest manner that may be. Let the Clerke of the Band then by all meanes be chosen a man of great honestic and Integrety, discreete and civill in his behauiour; of temperate qualitie and modelt countenance, having in him a certaine Gravity, or face of authority which may even challenge and 'as it were command both loue and respect from the Souldier; he must of necessity be a good pen-man, writing a swift, legible and readie hand; he ought to have good skill in Arithmaticke and the knowledge both of whole and broken Numbers; at the worst he must be prefit in casting al manner of accounts and able in Merchantlike manner to keepe the account betweene debtor and creditor; If he have the Lattin tongue he is a Treasure, but if to it also the vnderstanding of other Languages he is an inestimable Iuell, for so he shall be able to trucke withstrangers for the benefit of the Company, and also to Interpret and take charge of Prisoners when any are taken.

It is the Office and duty of this Clarke to keepe the Rolls and muster Bookes conteining the names and surnames of the whole Company, and these hee shall have in sundry and divers manners, as in one Booke or Roll according to the Armes and weapons which they carry, sorting every severall Armes by themselves, as first all the Officers in their true Rankes, then all the Pikes and short weapons, then the Musquets and

Harquebusses or bastard Musquets if there be any.

In another Booke or Rolle all their names according to their Squadrons having the Officers of every Squadron first, then the Gentlemen, and laftly the common Souldier, and in the third Booke or Rolle all their names as they March in their owne perticular Battalia and according to the dignity of their places; fo that when the Mustermaster or Captaine shall come to make a general call of the Campany, he may deliuer them the first Booke; If it be to goe to the watch and to reckon any one Squadron he may deliuer the second Booke; and if it be to question or find out any one perticular man as he stands in the Grosse, whether he have quit his place or remaine according to dutie, that then hee may vie the third and last Booke, and of these hee shall never be without fundry Coppies, of which first Booke he may tender one to the Muster-master when he is commanded, another to his Captaine, a third to his Lieutenant, and a fourth for himselfe, which hee ought to keepe as a president, for in it hee shall enrolle all Souldiers as they are entertained, carefully keepe their Enteries, their Deaths and Discharges; and this first Booke shall be written at large and in Folio, not having a-

boue scauen names at most vpon a page, that hee may the better infert any exchange, defect, absence, death, or other faults which may procure a checke, that so an even reckoning may bee kept betweene the Captaine and the Souldier: Out of the second Booke hee shall give a Coppie to enery Corporall of his owne true Squadron, fo that when he is to goe to his watch or to doe any other necessary dutie, he may by it call them together and feethar no man be wanting, and this booke must be writtenlike the former because of Cafualties, Death, or Alteration; Out of the last Booke which is according to March or Dignite of places, he shall take Coppies and give them to the Serieants fixing to every name the figure of the place in which he marcheth as to the name which leadeth the right hand File the figure 1.to the name that leadeth the lefthand File the figure of 2. to the name of the bringer vp of the righthand File or first in the Reare the figure 3. and to the name of the bringer vp of the lefthand File or fecond in the Reare the figure 4. and fo fourth of all the rest according to martiall discipline and as shall bee shewed more lardgely in the Office of the Sericant, fo that if any man shall quitte his place either in March or other exercise, the Serieant may immediately find his name and fee due punishment extented, and this may either be written in a booke or in a large Table at the discretion of the Clerke and Serieant.

The Clerke shall (as convenient leasure will suffer him) once in a weeke reade to the whole Company the Lawes and Articles of the Armie; and if there be no Minister or Preacher about them, he shall at convenient times, (as at the setting of the watch or breaking up of the same)

reade divine prayers vnto them.

He shall receive from the Treasurer or vnder-treasurer, all the pay belonging to the Captaine and Souldiers, and fee faithfully and truely distributed to every man his due according to the Captaines directions, and he shalkeepe a faithfull Audit between the Captaine and all others, clearing every reckoning without doubt or disorder, hee is to receive from the victualer all proportions of victuals, & to keep a due account of the prizes thereof, he is to receive all Provaunt Apparell, with the value of the same, and he is to receive all manner of Munition and Armes which is necessary for the whole Company, and of all these hee shall keepe true records, fetch out the Certificates and kepe all reckonings euen betweene his Captaine and all Officers. This Clerke is hee which ought to be both the Companies Philition and the Companies Marchant, for he ought by Information to the Captaine and by his directions to prouide all things necessary for them, both in sicknesseand in health, defaulking the same out of their wages or other allowance of the Captaines: If any man shal happen to be slaine, or otherwise to depart out of this life, the Clerke of the Band shall administer vpon his goods, and making a true Inventory or prayfure thereof, (after his debts and defaulcations are paid) shall bee answerable for the rest to his next of blood, or else such on whome by Willhe had formerly bestowed it. He shall also keepe a true note of the time of his death, whereby a Certificate may be made to the Muster-master, and so that neither the Prince may be deceived in his pay, nor yet the victualers over reckon the Captaine in the multiplicitie of their victuals; He is to see that such as are wounded be doely dressed by the Surgeons, and if that any bee taken Prisoner, hee is to awaken his Captaines memory touching their Ransome.

To conclude if he be a good Clerke he is an excellent member both for Captaine and Souldier, for it is impossible that any Captaine should thriue if he have an euill and vnconscionable Clerke, for the waies are so infinite by which hee may deceive him, that not all the eies and tongues which are vpon Rumors outside, can either deserne or vnfold them till the mischeise be so rotten that no medecine can cure it; and on the other side if he be all for the Captaine and have no honest respect towards the Souldier, then vnlesse the Captaine be a Saint, the mischiese is much more hainous, for all being sish that comes to his ner, he will devoure up the Companie tentimes worse then the Enemie; and therefore a most especial care would be had to the ellection of this Officer, for having the distribution of all the Captaines waters, it is in his power e-

ther to kill or comfort at his pleasure.

There is another Officer depending vpon a foote Companie, which in some small parts resembleth this, and is called in the warrs a Furrier or Harbenger, one that in marching and watching hath no command at all; But when the Company is drawne into Garison, then he taketh vpon him the effect of his authority, which is from the Serieant Major (or other Officer his Deputie) to receive all Billets due for the Companie, and to distribute them to the Company so as every man may be acommodated according to the abillity of the place and necessitie of the times, he is also upon the placing of a Campe to attend the Quarter-mafer generall, and having received his proportion of ground and discription of Streets, he is to quarter his owne Company and to allot to every man the ground whereon to place his Cabbin. Euery iudicious Captaine may out of his Companie soone picke out a man fit for this purpose, for the art is easie and if at any time he should doubt, he might behold example enough round about him. These, although they have a certaine power, yet are but common Souldiers, neither can they well be Ranckt with the Officers of a Company, for in these is only but a kind of Trust, in the Officers is both a Trust and Commandment, as the discourse already hath shewed to your Lordship, which if it bee either, briefer then you wish, or longer then your leasure in the reading could assigne it : Remember my (Lord) that Souldiers howfocuer they loue swiftnesse in their Actions, yet they cannot indure to have their Takes broken.



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE VVILLIAM LORD SANDES OF THE VINE.

THE ARGUMENT.

Of Drummes and Phiphes.

T is (Noble Sir) your honour'd place and Birth which makes me fixe your name to this Epiftle, and it must be your Vertue and loue to the Souldier, which must make mee appeare blamelesse in your opinion: for I must confesse, I have nothing to rise up betweene my selfe and your good thoughts, but onely this, That howsoever now we are spectators and beholders of our neighbours troubles, yet

we have beene our selves vpon the Stage, and may be againe when God shall take his Protection from vs, and therefore this Art of Warre is nei-

ther to be contemned nor forgotten.

To proceed then in my Range of Martiall dependants, the next which doth precede those which I have overpassed, are the Drumme and Phiph, which for as much as like the former they are Officers of power, and not of commaund, therefore I may in no wise give them place before the Commanders, only I will allow them according to their place in March, and their greatnesse in entertainment to be the best of private Souldiers; and as they are Instruments of direction and incouragement to others: so are they by superiour Officers to be directed themselves. Now albe I doe iowne these two Officers together, and that in Ranke and pay they are all one, yet it is to be understood, that the Phiph is but onely an Instrument of pleasure, not of necessitie, and it is to the voice of the Drum the Souldier should wholly attend, and not to the aire of the whistle; for the one (which is the Drumme) speakes plainely and distinctly, the other

speakes loud and shrill, but yet curiously and confusedly, and therefore the Drumme being the very tongue and voyce of the Commander, he is to have an exceeding carefull and diligent eare vnto all the wordes of directions (and are called our Vocabula Artis) which shall proceed from the Captaine, and accordingly to performe and speake it in his beatings; for to mistake and do contrary, as to beat a Retrait when he is commanded to Charge, or to beat a Charge when men are to retire, were a thing of that danger, that the armie might perish by the action. Therefore as it is behouefull that every Drum take heed to his directions, so it is as neceffary, that every Souldier bee diligent to learne and vnderstand all the vsefull beatings of the Drumme, and that the Drumme himselfe be willing and pliable to instruct and informe whosoeuer of his company that is desirous to be informed in the same; and to make plaine vnto them the alteration of notes, and how they differ in their fignifications, and which way (with the most ease) they may apprehend the same. Of which Beatings of the Drum, these are the most behouefull & vsefull for every raw Souldier to learne. First, in the morning the discharge or breaking vp of the Watch, then a preparation or Summons to make them repaire to their Colours; then a beating away before they begin to march; after that a March according to the nature & custom of the country (for divers countries haue divers Marches) then a Charge, then a Retrait, then a Troupe, and lastly a Battalion, and a Battery, besides other founds which depending on the phantasttikenes of forrain nations are not so vieful: for according to the opinion of Sir Roger Williams, Drums are but onely to direct, it is the man which must fight: Neither ought a man to be (like Captaine Hindar) so nice or curious in the beatings of the Drumme, proportioning the body, legges, head, hands and euery motion fo exactly to euery stroke or doubling of the Drumme, as if it were almost a treason in Nature to walke without that Instruments affistance. These superstitious curiosities in matters of so weake importance, are disparagements to wise mens reputations; and when they take vpon them to frame a Custome of almost impossible actions, they so loose themselves in the fondnesse of their designes; that many excellent vertues wher with they stand possest, neither can nor will be discerned through these black clouds of phantastique resolution: For thus Hindar taking vpon him to write a Booke of this vnnecessary subject (though he had many rare knowledges in him) yet had them so cast out of mens memories, that the more he labored to get beliefe, the more he lost, the credit of his estimation. And yet this I must say for him, that it is supposed by many well judging Souldiers, that he was one of the first which gaue light to our late Postures, and formable motions, and albe not in that perfection in which they now are, yet questionlesse, hee found out the Grounds and Bases whereon others did erect their goodlier buildings : Let therefore the Drumme studie Art and plainnesse, for that is the best to draw a dull mind to apprehension; and when his duties in the Field are finished, if then being retired into the Tent, he have then other artificiall and Musical straines, wher with to

steale

Reale away the minds and eares of his hearers, it will be a great honour vinto him; neither for mine owne part have I heard more I weet or more folemine melodic, then that which the Drumme and Flute bath afforded.

It is the Office of the Drumme to make all Proclamations, and with an audible voyce to declare all the commaundements of the Generall of Captaine: they are to call and fummon the Souldiers together to performe all manner of duties, and when any dies, the Dramme with a fad folemnicie must bring him to his grave, for it is the only mourner for the lost, and the greatest honor of Funerals: whence it comes that any man dying (about the degree of a common Souldier) the Drum performing the last dutie, may for his fee challenge the Sword of the deceased.

It is the Office of the Drumme to furnionall Townes before they be belieged, and to carie the Generals Defiances or Braues to the enemy accordingly as he shall be directed; he is the ordinary Messenger to earrie all mellages to and fro betweene the Generall & the enemy, and between Commander and Commander, but especially at such time as faire Quarter is holden: At night when the watch is to be fet, the Drumme Maior beginneth first to beat it, and then after him all the rest in their order through the whole Armie or Garrison, and then after prayers are said, they conduct their Squadron to their Carpedu guard, & so attend to give feconds to every Alarme. A Drumme (though martiall in every part of his calling) is yet rather a man of Peace then of the fword, and it is most dishonourable in any man (wittingly and out of his knowledge) to strike him or wound him and yet questionlesse many of them are exceeding valiant, and indeed no leffe they ought to bee: for valour and courage is necessary in all their imployments, for his place is euer at his Captaines heeles, it is he that brings the Battels to joyne, hee stands in the middest when Swords flie on all fides; he brings them to pell, mell, and the furie of execution; and it is he that brings them both on and off, when they are either fortunate, or abandoned and forfaken.

The Drumme that will be accounted absolute, and every way fitting for his place, must besides the exquisitenesse and skilfulnesse in his Art and Instrument, and the Rudiments of Martiall Discipline, bee also a good Linguist, and well scene in forraine Languages: for by the carrying of Messages, he must commerce and have to doe with people of fundry Nations, which (for want of knowledge being discharged by any second person, it is a great disparagement to the Drumme, and his Ignorance makes him a servant which otherwise might be a Master. It is also the Office and dutie of the Drumme to carry Ransomes, and pay the agreements betweene his fide and the enemie: It is hee that must trucke and compound for Prisoners; hee must bring them home when they are redeemed, and place them in safetie; and it is he that must conduct Pledges, carry them and recarry them, and leade to the enemy and his owne Tents such Hostages and Prisoners as shall be exchanged: he may vpon tolleration from the Generall, carrie Challenges and Defiances from one enemie to another, and either for Honour or Ladies

I 2

loues

loues make composition for single Encounters, prouided it bee vpon foot, as with the Push of the Pike, the Locking of Halberds, the Iovning of Partizans, the Crossing of Swords, or else the Exchanging of Bullets: but if it be vpon Horseback, then it is the office of the Trum-

per, and the Drumme hath no interest in it.

To conclude therefore mine Epistle (for I feare I have beene tedious to your Lordshippe; and like a weary Traueller am loath to goe out of the beatenpath wherein I take delight) it is most necessary that the Drumme and Phiph bee men of verie able and praise worthie qualities, and of comely and well shaped proportions, and indued with all these especials Vertues which should adorne a perfect Souldier, as Obedience, Silence, Secrecie, Sobrietie, Valour, and Loyaltie, that so they may bee the great Examples of duetie to those which shall live about them: close in all Counsels, Temperate in delivering Messages, Stour in performing the will of their Commaunders, and faithfull in all their vndertakings: all which will bee as so many Crownes and

Garlands to adorne their good deeds; and by that meanes

Vertue will neuer forfake them, nor will true Reward

and Merit lofe a Purchase it hath got with

onia or brong of so have fo much Honour.

feet as let of the comp. A leavest to the switch hough marrials in every pair of his cultime) is not removed that the fivord, and it is most diffeone make in all the cultime in the cultime of the control of the contr

williant, and indeed we look a control beet for valour and courage is

him and set of the feath of thems of thems

all elsein inogloy a trading in place is energy his Captaines that being the flerell to loyer hard single middel different all deleg the lawer them to rell, mell, and the fuse of exect the stant the self brugs them best on and of, a leaver recition builder, or share on Land fortaken. our bac melolds i member of livers i selection for his place, on the before the exquitmental and stall and and his Racingons of Marria Laddons and well ( and in flat mine I among cos : for by the carbear oblid and sabstwood to may of lotter, and cond period, it is a great differential to the Presence and ned and exhibit a ferrant which cabetwife and about Maller e Office and slatic of the Praymer spears Rankinger and pay contents between the file and the corner : It is her that mult decreed, and place them is lateries and trisherner and conexcept when and receip their and lande to the county and sowne lien stock Hollages and Polloners as that be exchanged; he evpen tolleration ham the General, carrie Challenges and Defianes from one counie to another, and either or henous or

# TOTHERIGHT HONORABLEED VVARD LORD VAVL

PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF TH

of HARODON.

THE ARGUMENT.

where the bound at he bear or or had forme in all

Of the Lanspesado ne segos los sepos



Being curious (my noble Lord) not to let paffe any thing that may challenge dependance vpon this dif-course which I have taken in hand though of never fo finall and vnrespected consequence) I thought meete to rest in this Epistle vpon the Office of the Lanspesado, which notwithstanding, it bee the meaneft and lowest of all Offices of commandment and indeed but the very shaddow or apparision of ano-

ther Inferior place; yet in respect it is the first and of equall antiquitie with many . I will not sticke to bestow two houres Meditation vpon the fame. And therefore to begin first of all with the name of this Officer, it is to be understood that Lanspesado (which is the first and meanest Officer in an Armie that hath any Commandment) is the same whom the Romans cal'd Decario, others Cabo-de-Camarado, Cabo-de-Camara or Lanfe-spezzate, any or all which fignifiea Deputie Corporall, and was indeed in the auncient disciplinea Commander of ten persons, for when companies were first compounded, they were then devided into Squadrons, and the Squadrons into Files, and the Files into fellowships or Camarados, & ouer thefe fellowships were made Leaders or Chiefes which they called Lanspesados being (as it were) the principall man of eleanen, but in our moderne warrs it a little varieth, for now when companies are de. uided into Squadrons, over the Squadronis appointed a Corporall, and vnder the Corporall a Lanspesado, who as his Deputie and in his absence (whether it be voon a Guard, Watch or otherwise) is to performe all his duties and Office; but in the presence of the Corporall, hee is only the leader of a File, and hath the charge or overlooking of halfe a Squadron, otherwise of this officer is little more required then of enery other ordinary and common Souldiermed conved or priew to memura or radio

Thefe

These ought to be elected out of the most sufficientest of all the meaner Ranke of persons, and to be of a carefull, obedient, and active spirit of a fubrill & wife dilpolition, they ought to be the best experimented of that Ranke and to be voyd of turbulent qualities, louers of concord and enemies of muteny and sedition; if they be old & experienc'd Souldiers. everry man almost is able with sufficiencie to discharge this place. but if they bee fluggish, Base and debosht fellowes, there is no Practife, Experience, nor Instruction whatsoeuer which can make them capable of ruling of other. Againe if they bee new leuyed Souldiers, and have never seene the warrs, then there will be some difficultie in the election, and a man can hardly discharge what he doth not know. But questionles, it is hard if in the number of fine and twenty men, two may not be found which have either feene or had some small tast of the warres; yet suppose they have not, it then behoueth the Captaine to looke into their naturall Inclinations and their aptnes, willingnes & lone vnto martiall exercise, and from thence to chuse out such as hee findes quickeft of apprehétion, fullest of care, vigilance, valor and observation, who by the helpe and assistance of his other Officers (whose aduice in this election he ought to require) may be made worthy and fit to take vpon them this commandment. But beware by all meanes of making choice of a Drunkard, Ruffian, or Prophane person, for they are most pernicious in these places, yet it any small falt happen, seeke by admonition to reclaime it, or else by threatning to displace him, for in the warres there is not any thing more difgracefull, or grieuous to a Souldier, then to be pulld backe or cast from authority, since all men stand at the ladder foote, and only indeauor to arise and get up upon the Scale of advancement. So that I conclude if any of these Inserior Officers bee subject to tome crimes, yet the very shame of dishonor and falling, will so afflict & torment him, that it will inforce him to endeauor amendment; but if the wound be desperate, it is no matter though hee perish, and the chang is wholesome; for we must suppose that at the first leaying or raising of men, their humors cannot bee knowne, neither is it fit to give Rule (though neuer so meane) to an vnruly person. Thus much I thought to write touching his election, & have the longer Infifted thereon, because being elected there is some difficultie & trouble in the remoue. It now remaineth that I proceed to his aprnes or fitnes for the same; for which there are many strong reasons, as first that there is no encrease of pay or peculiercharge to the State, neither is there any thing in it to wooe his continuance thereunto, more then a little hope of glory, for his reward is only Superiority of place and hope of aduancement, which is from that place to a Corporall, thence to a Serieant, and thence succesfinely according to his merit & fortune, which hope makes him strong in his diligence, and carefull in all his duties, striuing in all things to outthine his companions, and as he is in a place about them, to in the merit thereof to exceede them, and both in Marches, Skirmishes, and every other occurrent of warre, to be vnto them an example and president.

Touch-

Touching the perticular duty of this Lanspelado and what he is to exercise in his place; first it is to be understood that he is the Captaine or Leader of that File which is next in true degree below his Corporall (of whose Squadron he holdeth his place) and is to give them all examples of good, ready and perfit service, leading them on vpon the enemie (in fuch fort as he is commanded) withall courage, counning and dexterity, and bringing them off with equal care, good order, and discresion; He is to looke that every Souldier within his Command or Denision, have his armes neate, cleane, and well scowred, that he be furnished with all Implements and accourrements belonging vnto the weapon where with he serueth; as Powder, Match, Bullet, Armes, and allthings else whatfoener which belongeth either to the Mufquet or any other weapon, hee is to give the Souldiers encouragement, and to make any thing facile and easie vnto them, which shall trouble their mindes or feeme hard and doubtfull, as also to hold them in the perseuerance of good actions, and to declare the honor and worth that is in Diligence and Obedience; he is to aduertise and give notice vnto his Commander if he vnderstand of any malecontents, or men whose spirits are apt to muteny and sedition, or whose speach and language tendeth therevoto; hee is alfo to discouer all manner of thefts or purloynings (whether of victualls or other matter) and any Iniury whatfoeuer which shall be done betweene peafon and person, for he being within the Cammarade or fellowship, and a man of equall quality and ranke (more then the name and shaddow of his place) and feeding and lodging continually amongst them. It is intended (confidering the freenes of fuch mens thoughts, & how vnapt they are to conceale what they imagine) that nothing can be done or pretended to which he shall not be previe (of what nature foeuer the mischeife be) if he bediscreete & honest : he shall be watchfull and diligent to liften after all alarmes, and when hee heareth any, to a. waken and rousevp those of his Deuision and to see that they issue not rudely or vnprouided, but with their armes about them in a decent and necessary fashion; and to his vetermost power doe all thinges that may bring on or further the service. In their watch they are Deputy Corporals, and when the Corporall is absent the Lanspesado shall take his place; command the Guard, appoint, set forth & relieue Sentinels, he shall take the word, receive Prisoners taken in the watch, deliver them ouer vnto his Superior Officer, & indeede doe all things what foeuer which belongs to the Corporall, and to this end, as in his owne place, so in the Corporalls also he shall be pregnant and ready, (the substance whereof followeth in the next insuing Epistle) lastly it is his duty to instruct his Devision in all the rudiments which belongs to their places as well in the manage of their Armes, as in the comely and well keeping of the same, and to that end hee shall shew them how to keepe their Armours & weapons from Ruft, & with what Ingredience, how to take their Pieces assunder and to make them cleane, and when need is how to vnbreech them; he shall (if need be) cast their Bullets for them, dry their

their powder, and have alwayes spare match in a readines, or at least instruct them how to doe it themselves, for that shall be to him some ease

and to them a greater profit.

Thus having shewed the duty of this Officer I will now returne to his vie, which though it confift in many things and all without any extraordinary charge, yet the greatest vicofall, is when Battalions are denided or subdevided into many petty fractions, then this Inferior Officer (who in a greater Body would be Ignorant) in this leffer Body will bee as knowing as any Officer can be. And superior Officers who command Battalions, Regiments, Companies and Squadrons, hauing many vnder their commands, cannot attend to reuisite and looke into Files and halfe Squadrons, or fee (being farre removed) whether they frand in their true and perfit distance, in this case this Officer is as helpefull as any (to them which command in cheife) and obserues all proportions, qualities and motions both of fuch as follow or fuch as front with him; for indeed, the motions in Files I can compare to nothing more fitly then to the dauncing of the old measures, in which if there be a good Leader, that by his eare can thyely diftinguish the found of the Instrument, and knowes when to double or single, forward, backward, fideway and on either hand, or when to begin and when to end, that then it much skills not what the followers counnings be. So in Files if there be a perfit Leader & but tractable observers, hardly can any Ignorace do hurt in the motio, but here methinks an old Souldier that loves not booke knowledge, pulls me by the eare, and faies: what ! have all warrs these distinctions or have these places been from the beginning? beleeue it, I have beene in services where if you should speake of Decario or Lanspesado, they would take it for some heathen Greeke, or a more dangerous language: to which I answer, that indeed they are not vsed in all warrs, much lesse in euery company, but I dare with constancie affirme that the best vnderstanders in Martiall Discipline, doe with all seuerity both vie them and apply themselves vnto them, finding them so neceffary and behouefull, that where there is a neglect or disdaine thereof, there without all question the company hatha wound, and the whole Armie wants (if not more) yet one feature of an excellent beautie.

Some latter writers haue given this name a farre different interpretation, calling them voluntary Lieutenants or Knights of Saint Georges Squadron, and applying them to the duties of a Gentleman of the companie of a Rounder; but it is only a fancie, and I have already shewed what they are and what depends vpon them : therefore in mine Epistle I will avoid disputation and only conclude, that what I have writ, mine experience hath scene, and what I affirme, all readings will allow to

have the best authoritie.

the and a doct the line about the California



# TOTHE RIGHT HONORABLE THOMAS LORD WINDSOR

them: he hall as the fetting of the watch hangtotal his Equaquia and decent and coinciv man Tan aim v bo Acta in Tan can or other fine.

xerolle of their Armes, and according to his skill, becready to infinite

Helitard (210) bear such a series of the Corporall. Settle work and a

Et it not (my Lord) be offensue, if for an houre or lesse I begge you from your more serious thoughts, to vouchsafe the reading of this blunt Epistle: for beleeue it (noble Sir) there must bee an Affection to your Goodnesse to moue me, and some hope in the labour that this service will Inne the time you spend in the trassique, or else questionlesse I should wish my selfe halfetost, and the papers consumed: how-

foeuer, it is Warre (which is the Garland of Nobilitie) and though time be neuer for pretious, yet none can be faid to be lost that is bestowed on fo worthy a Subject.

The Corporall (to whom now my discourse leads me) is he whom the Spaniard cals Cabo de Esquadra, and being a degree about the Lanse sado, is the Commander of a whole Squadron, which Squadron is commonly the fourth part of a Company that is compounded of one hundred; and it is divided into two Camarados or fellowships, each containing twelve persons, that is to say, ten sentinels, one Gentleman, and a Lanse sado, so that the whole Squadron is twentie foure men besides the Corporall, which makes up a full square of sive (which is the least Battalion.) Now though I here set downe this certaine number, to expresse an uncertaine quantitie, yet know it is in the Captaines power to make his Squadrons bigger or lesse at his own pleasure; yet this proportion is most six (though not alwayes constant) and therefore most necessary, yea the old Souldiers doe, and the good Souldiers will finde it most best.

This Corporall ought to be a man carefully chosen out, and indued with Valor, Vertue, Diligence and Experience; he ought to be of reuerend and grave yeares, thereby to draw on respect, but with all of a sound sudgement: for experience without it, is but like a lewell in the bottom of the

K

fca,

sea, which neither adornes it selfe nor others; hee must be a cherisher of vertue, and a louer of concord, for he is said to be the father of his squadron, and must therefore loue them and prouide for them as for his naturall children.

Touching the quality of his place, he is first to ouersee the Lanspesado, that he doe his dutie in all occasions, & that the Armes of his Squadron be kept neat and cleane, as hath been formerly shewed, that every man haue such munition as belongs to his place, that hee keepe it safe, and make no waste thereof, but vpon needfull occasions : he shall stirre them vp to goe neat in their apparell, and reproue them for any thing that is contrary to the articles of the Army: he shall see them ready to perform any dutie when they are commanded; and he shall call them often to the exercise of their Armes, and according to his skill, bee ready to instruct them: he shall at the setting of the watch bring forth his Squadron in a decent and comely manner, and having (from the Serieant or other Superiour Officer) received the Word (in a fecret and reverend fort) hee shall then draw them to the Corps duguard, where it is his place to prouide coale, wood, or other fuell to keepe a continuall fire, both for the fauing of Match, lighting of Creffets, or for other commodities: then hee shall draw forth his Sentinels, and place them (according to the necessity of the times) either Single or double, Perdues or otherwise, and he shal give them their charge and directions, and place them in their Sentinell posture; then vpon his returne he shall call foorth the Gentlemen Rounders, and send them abroad to make a fearch of the watch, and to fee that every Sentinell doe his dutie, which to performe he shall give them the Word in their eares seuerally: then he shall place hanfelfe upon the Corps du guard, and both fit filently himselfe, and cause others to doe the same, that hee may the better apprehend any call what loeuer: Assoone as the Sentinell calleth, he shall answer Holla, and immediatly go either himselfe single, with his fword drawn, or (in especial cases where the enemy lodgeth neere) with a guard of two at least (being a Pike and a Shot) vnto the Sentinell, and making his Guard stand vpontheir guard, he shall place the point of his Sword to the left brest of him that is to give the Word (whether he be Rounder or other privat messenger, & so fixing his point to his brest with his left thumbe (laying his eare to his mouth very closly) receive the Word, which if it be right, he shall give the party passage, if otherwise, he shall take him prisoner, and disarme him, then lead him to his guard, and there keepe him till it be morning, or else deliuer him to his superiour officer : but if any refistance be offered, then it shalbe lawfull for the Corporall to kill him: thus he shall continue his watch till it be day, or that other companies come to relieue him; and he shall according to the scason of the weather, the danger of the place, & the strength of his Squadron, change and relieue the Sentinels so oft as he pleaseth, and alwayes prouided that in the first Round, if the Captaine of the watch come himselfe, or the Generall vndisguised, that then the Corporall shal take notice ther-of, and not receive the Word but give it: and that all these things may

with more readinesse be performed, it is meet that the corporall haue in perfit memory both the names and furnames of all in his Squadron; also if it be voon a new encampment, or voon the first fitting down of a siege. he shall then take his directions for placing the Sentinell, either from the Scout-master, or some other of his owne superiour officers; and where the dangers are eminent, or (in common opinion) desperat, there the Corporal shall place for Sentinels, the oldest Souldiers he hath, men of greatest importance, or Gentlemen of speciall ranke and vertue : and lastly, he shall have an especiall care not to give the word to any new or raw Souldiers, but to fuch as are of knowledge and experience, for any small mistake or omission might breed a disturbance ouer all the Armie.

It is also the Office of the Corporall, when the Company liueth vpon Prouant victuals, to receive from the Clerke, Serieant or other Officer, all the prouant-victuals which do appertaine to his Squadron, and to fee the fame weighed and truly shared amongst them with all indifferencie and equality, without any respect of persons, or hope of sucre and commoditie, and shall see, that in their Cabins and lodgings they do so accommodate themselves, that they may live together like lovers & companions, neither pestring themselues so together that they may breed infection or ficknes, nor yet like melancholy Hares, liue fo alone and retired, that men may imagine their musings to be nothing els but dreames and plots of future mischiefe: and truly it is held for a maxime (amongst vnderstanding Souldiers) that a busic mind in an idle or retired body, is like an vnruly and tempestuous wind, which being long restrain'd, and breaking out with all his strength and maliceabout it, ouerturnes and teares vp by the roots whatfoeuer withstands it, Nay even in Princes themselves it is mightily disallowed, and they are said, when they doe affect too much folitarinesse, to be like cag'd vp Lions, which neuer walke abroad, but either to affright or hurt; and hence it comes, that Cafar neuer suspected Brutus alacritie, but ever feared Cassius melancholy, and therefore let the Corporall be carefull to keepe his Squadron from these extremities.

When the Corporals Squadron goes forth to serue vpon the face of the enemy, he shall himselfe leade the principall Fyle, and by his example both make them come on with all brauery, and by his observations make them most diligently observe all the commands of their Superiours : he must not allow any to set his foot before him, or to outstrip him in courage (prouided he exceed not the bounds of discretion) neither must any expresse the knowledge of command more then himselfe; for he must equally vnderstand both how to obey, & how to command, & therwithal it must be mixt with such a teperance, that he must neither overdoe nor vnderdoe, lest he vtterly vndoe; for the one shewes Rashnes, and the other Basenesse, both which are faults of that extremitie, as they never have power to issue forth, but still punishment ouertakes them. It is likewise a part of his dutie (if he be a Shot) to observe that none of his Squadron discharge too soone or amazedly without aduise, for then they seldome hit, and men are naturally so prone to come to an end of their feare and trouble,

K 2

NOIT

trouble, that the fault of leifure is feldome perceived: besides, when they discharge before the enemy be come within the distance of point-blank they not onely lose their labour, but give the enemy leave to approch without danger, and fo are either put to rout, or elfe performe fome greater inconvenience: for this manner of too early discharging discovers an vnnaturall feare, and where that is neither can Aduife nor true Leuell be taken, but as it is the child of Confusion, so confused are all things which either mixe or come neere it. To conclude, when men discharge their thot with leifure and difcretion, and that the volley goes wholly and entirely together, when levell is truly taken, and the Obiect not supposed. but constantly perceived, then doth ten Shot more good then an hundred, and the example and wounds which proceed from fo ftrong a Resolution, more shakes the hearts of the enemy, then all the fires, affrights or noises that Gunns, Arts, or mens voices can vtter; and that this may be performed with better perfection, the Corporall shall teach his Squadron how to give their peeces their full lading, and how to ramme in their Bullets to the best aduantage of the blow: so that all things concurring in a decent and artificiall forme together, the Discipline may be so absolute, that no newe Curiositie or Inuention can start vp to amend it.

Infinite much might a knowing Experience write of this mans Place and Office, and of the variation of opinions touching the same, but my desire is to draw as neere as I can to our best moderne Practise, and to that discipline which is most frequent in our Nation, that who so ever shall come to apparell his mind in these Instructions, may not walk forth py-bald and Antiquely suited, but in such an habit as all his Countreymen may know him, allow him, and indeed imitate him; all other I account but gaudie Boskage, or idle Crotesco worke, on which when so ever a man fixes his eye, though he finde Art and Proportion in the knots, trayles and deuices, yet if hee gaze on the Faces and Fi-

gures, he shall find them gastly, vgly, halfe maimed, and out of all comely proportion.

TO

Manual of Sprodly

on still on the life was the life.



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE, THO MAS LORD VVENT

VVORTH of Nettlesteed.

THE ARGVMENT.

The Office of a Serieant.



Could wish (my good Lord) that this Epistle which I dedicate to the name and honor of your noble House, had in it as great a hope of eternity as your vertues, forthen I know, not so much as enuy would rise vp against it, but it would last beyond all Times & find no end or period, either in Age, Ruft, or the worlds Confumption: bnt all humaine writings are mortall, & mine I know is borne weake and fickly,

therefore fince it cannot line as it would, yet shall it last as longe as it can, and even to the last gaspe affirme, that your owne worth hath cald me; and the honor of your house bound me to the dedication of this service.

To discribe then the Office of an ordinary Serieant of a Band, it is to be allowed that he is one of the most needfull, and ought to be one of the most heedfull instruments in the whole Armie, and indeed his name Importeth no lesse which Itaketobe Seruians. He hath in the body of the company no Raunge at all, but is extrauagant and going vp and downe to ouerfee all Raunges; his command (how euer it be generally disposed) would in perticular consist of two Squadrons, which are fifty men or more at discretion, and may propperly bee called a Serieancie, which though it be a new tearme yet it is not vnfit. They ought for their election and qualities of minde to be valiant, expert, vigilant and diligent; For his armes how soeuer some allow him a Corslet & the apurtenances, yet with vs (except in affaults a Scalados) he hath only a good Sword and a faire Halbert, which is a short and ready weapon, apt for him to mannage and handle in any place of straitenes or other inconuc. nience: with it he keepeth all the Band in order and maketh them in Marching, Standing, and all motions to keepe their Rankes and Files in

an euen comely and true proportion, and if any be so incorrigible or abfurd that admonition will not reclaime him, then with that weapon hee may enforce him; and by turning the blunt end towards him shew hee might frike, yet forbeares : for but in fatall cases should a Souldier bee stricken, as in the face of the enemie when one mans disorder might hazard the whole Battaile, in that case the Serieant may kill him, for one may put in Rout tenne, ten an hundred, and an hundred tenthouland; he is when the the Drumms beate, the Colours flie, & the Souldiers are gathered together, to see enery man raunged in his true place according to the nature of his weapon, drawing up the Files and placing them in square or other proportion according to the direction of his Captaine. If any loofe Files of shot goe forth to serue, the Serieant is to be their leader, except (by an especiall commandment) a superior Officer be ap. pointed; He is the Herauld or Pursuivant belonging to the Captaine for he carrieth all his messages, directions and commandments to the company and affoone as the word is given, fees it effected and performed; he must carry of and on (in all Skirmishes according to directions) men that are spent or hurt and hee bringeth in new supplies to releiue them. He must be Hic et vbique ready vpon any matter of consequeuce to goe cuento the Generall, and to declare vnto him all proceedings, and hee ought to have that vnderstanding to give a good account vpon demaund of perticultars; he is to fetch the watchword from the Serieant Maier or other supreame Officer and to carry it to the Captaine; he is also to deliuer it to the Corporalls and that with all carefulnes and secrecie, for by Martiall Law it is death to discouer it contrary to appointment. If any muteny happen in the company the Serieant vpon commitment shall guard them till they bee deliuered ouer to the Prouoft; hee ought to bee a punnisher of all sinne, and an encourager to vertue: In the ablence of the superior Officers he commands as much as the Captaine, he deuids every Squadron to the places which are most fitting, conducts them to their watches, directs both the Corporalls and Souldiers what they are to doe, and appoints how all the Sentinels must be placed to the best advantage. To be short it is one of the maine and principall points of his Office (as conueniencie will give him leave) to draw forth the short and to teach them the manage and true vse of the Peece, and how in the comliest and brauest manner that may be to conforme both the weapon and their bodies to the most excellentest Postures: as first by laying a Mulquetiers Armes confusedly before him, to command him to Takeup his Armes, that is to fay (having his Merian on his head, and his Sword by his fide) he ffall first take vp his Bandeliers with his right hand, and put them on with the same, then take vp his Match and put one end betweene his little finger and his Ring finger of the left hand, and the other end betweene the Ring finger and the great finger, of the same hand, then take vp his Rest and put it into his lest hand, then stepbing forward with his right Legge, take vp the Musquet within a hand fullof the vpper endank so raise it vpright, then letting his hand sinke,

let him Iert it vp without sloping and so catch it by the breech and then laying the Rest to it let him shoulder it, then the Serieant shall command him to Prepare for Skirmish; that is to say, hee shall light his March at both ends, put Bullets in his mouth and change his Rest if it bee in his right hand into his left: Then the Sergeant shall teach the Souldier to Rest his Musquet, then The Sentinell Posture, then the Saluting Postures and all these Postures are to be done standing still.

After this he shall teach him the Postures which are to be performed in marching, as Shoulder your Musquet, and carry your Rest in your right

band, Leuell your Musquet, and Slope your Musquet.

Then the Postures which are to be performed in charging as, Cleere your Pan: Prime your Pan: Shut your pan: Cast off your loose powder: Blow your pan: Cast about your Musquet with both your hands and traile your Rest: Open your charges: Charge your Musquet with powder: Draw your scouring Sticke: Shorten your Sticke: Rame in your powder: Draw out your Sticke: Charge with Bullet: Rame in your Bullet: Draw out your Sticke: Shorten your Sticke and put it up: Bring your Musquet sorward with the lest hand: Fold it up in your right hand and recover your Kest.

And lastly he shall teach him the Postures which are to be performed in discharging, as Carry the Rest in the lest hand preparing to give sire: Slope your Musquet and let the Rest sinke: In the right hand poyze the Musquet: In the lest hand carry the Musquet with the Rest: In the right hand take your Match betweene the second singer and the thumbe: Hold the match saft and blow it: Cocke your Match: Trie your Alatch: Guard your pan and blow your match: Open your pan. Present your Musquet: Give sire: Dismount your musquet and sarry it with the Rest: Vncocke your match and put it

up betweene your fingers.

Now assoone as your Sergeant hath taught all these Postures perfectly and that the Souldier can doe them readily, nimbly and exactly, with a comely grace and a braue presence, he shall then instruct the Souldier how to reduce and bring all this great number of Postures (as namely) the siue which are done standing, the three marching, the eighteene charging, and the sourceene discharging (which are only for Military Instruction) into three only and no more, and which three he shall only we in service or before the face of the enemie and no other,

and they are thus pronounced.

stake ready which containes all the Postures which are done either stauding still or marching; the next, Present, which containes all the Postures in Charging; and lastly, Gine Fire, which containes all the Postures in Discharging. Besides these he shall also teach them how to give their vollies with those in their Ranke, as when the first Ranke have given their vollie (if the Battalia march) then that first Ranke to stand still and the second to passe through it and so give their vollie and then to stand, and the third to advance up and so consequently all the Rankes, but if the Battalia stand, the first Ranke having given their vollie shall fall backe to the Reare either in wheele or in countermarch, and

the fecond Ranke shall come into their places and give their vollie and fo confequently all the reft; but if the Battalia fall backe or Retire, then shall all the shot stand still and no man advance a foote of ground, but the first Ranke shall give their vollie and then fall backe to the Reare. so likewise the second Ranke, and fall backe in like manner, and foall the restrill they have lost so much ground as to the Commander shall seeme fufficient, fo shall the vollie still be continued and the enemie neuer free from anoyance.

To conclude, a good Serieant is an admirable benefit, and if he line and execute his place well any long time, no man deserueth advancement beforehim, for besides all that hath beene spoken of him, hee is of wonderfullvie in all Scalades, Affaults, Mines, or things of that Nature. and if to beautifie all the precedent vertues, he likewife be inriched with any small proportion of learning, especially in the Art of Arithmaticke, whereby he may judge of the alteration and proportion of fundry

bodies and how to devide and subdevide numbers at his pleafure, then I dare affirme he is an absolute Serieant, nor can his Captaine wish or desire a rarer or better Iewell to depend vpon his person. The charter of the dear of the charter of the chart

The your to the standard of th our forther thank and the state of the ree Reft on the right hand the state of the endline of the same of the second of the to the bear to the work and the first of the first over the total and the first of

They art Street, and Somether It of the elected these Politics nellect.

tool set Castlei mad that of the book of the load and the state of t

to log till or had thang a did next, second, which contains all the

and and whatedord to be a literated to and the and the the the tradite and

An Mes, but File is we with a let the Blake has since their volto the little for the tity is the differ the process of its connections to good

3 .....

and the third to extract ve and to confequence distract

the state of the s

the state of the second second



### THE RIGHT HONORABLE, IOHN LORD MORDANT OF

TVRVY.

THE ARGVMENT.

The. Office of the Ensigne.



He Ensigne or Alferes (as the Spaniard cals him) is (my good Lord) the first great Officer of a priuate Company : for all the former (howfocuer neceffary) are but petty and low places, this only the first of Eminence and Account; and therefore in his election great confideration is to bee had, and to the making vp of his perfection many great vertues are required, as Valour, Wisedome, Fidelitie, and Honestie: he hath the guard of his Captaines Co-

lours, and therein is trufted with his Honour and Reputation, and if hee be comely of person, strong and amiable, hee is a greater glorie to his place, and more becomming in Seruice: but because in the Warres, Officer's expect to be aduanc't by Succession, as a Lieutenant to rise to bee a Captaine; an Enfigne, a Lieutenant; the eldest Serieant, an Enfigne; the Corporal!, a Sericant; and the Lanspelado, a Corporall: I will leave to argue more of his choice, and onely affirme, it is enough if he be vertuous, for that makes him worthy.

This Ensigne wee corruptly call Antient, and I have seene it written Antesigne, but for mine owne part I rather take it to come of Insignia, because in the first rimes men carried therein their Armes or Coat-Armour. God himselfe did first appoynt Ensignes for the children of Ifrael in their fenerall Tribes, & by that Imitation it succeeded to the Grecians, Romans, and all forts of warlike Nations. They were in the first ages of wondrous great consequence: for those which wanne them did beare them and carry them as their owne, neither might the lofer euer beare any

any after, except he wanne them in the field: but when the inconvenience of this was found, and it proued grieuous that one Christian should thus dishonour another, then men began to forbeare the carrying of Armes. and only fixed therein a Deuise or Empresa, and some but the only variation of two severall colours (and so are called Colours) as we doe now at this present; therfore to proceed to the accourrements of our Enfigne; He shall be armed at all peeces from the mid-thigh vpward with a faire Sword by his fide, and his Captaines Colours or Enfigne in his hand. which Colours if they belong to a private Captaine ought to bee mixt equally of two severall colours, that is to say (according to the rules of Herauldry) of Colour and Mettall, and not colour on colour, as Greene and Red, or Blacke and Blew, or fuch like, nor yet mettall on mettall as White and Yellow, or Orangetawny and White: for colours fo borne, shew Bastardy, peasantry, or dishonor. Now in the corner which is next to the vpper part of the Staffe, hee shall carry in a faire large square or Canton (containing a fixth part of the Colours) a plaine Red croffe in a white field (called Saint Georges crosse) which is the Ensigne of our kingdome of England. If the colours doe belong to a Colonell, they shall then be all of one entire colour, or one entire mettall, only the Red croffe or Enfigne of the kingdome shall be in his due place as aforefaid. If they belong to a Colonell generall, to the Lord Marshall of the field, or any fuch superiour Officer, then they shall be all of one entire colour or mettall, and the Red croffe or Enfigne of the kingdom shall be in a very little square or canton, as in an eight part of the field, or lesse if it please them; But if they belong to the Generall of the field, then they shall be of one entire colour or mettall without any Red crosse at all. Now for as much as I have seene here at home, and also in forraine nations (in the carriage of colours) as groffe abfurdities as any malice could wish to behold in the folly of his enemy, and that doubtleffe it proceeds from ignorance (fince no master of Reason would be guiltie of his owne Iniury) I will therefore here a little make bold to amplifie the fame.

It is then to be vnderstood, that every Gentleman of Coat-armor (being capable to beare Colors, ought to carry them compounded of those two principall colours which are contained in his Coat-armour, being the field and the chiefe charge thereof, which that no Ignorance may be busic to finde out, they are evermore contained in the Band-role vpon which his Crest standeth, being indeed a true tipe or figure of his colours

wreathed together as the support of his honour.

Now in as much as Captaines are not all Gentlemen of Coat-armor, and so take vnto themselues (in these dayes) a more particular freedome, and say, that Honor is not buckled to them, but to their vertues, and that vertue consists not in the sames of Ancestors, but in their owne actions, and defences of the Church, their Conntrie, King, and the oppressed, and so may suit or elect their colours according to their hopes and imaginanations, taking (as it were) Honor from any object they fancy: I will here therefore first shew you the nature and signification of colours, and then

some particular offences: in which an indifferent mixture being made,

the composition must needs be Noble and wholesome.

There be in military Honor nine severall complexions, and are distinguished by two names, the one Mettall, & the other Colour. Of Mettals there be two, as Tellow and White (figuring Gold & Silver) and of colours there be seaven, as Blacke, Blew, Red, Greene, Purple, Tawnie and Ermine, the dignitie of all which being compared to Vertues, Heanenly bodies, and Precious stones, is a labour too great to discourse in so short an Epistle.

For the fignification of these colours, Tellow betokeneth Honour, or height of Spirit, which being neuer separate from vertue in all things is most iealous of disgrace, and may not indure the least shadow of im-

putation.

White fignifieth Innocence, or puritie of Conscience, Truth, and an vp-

right Integritie without blemish.

Blacke signifieth Wisedome and Sobrietie, together with a seuere correction of too much Ambition being mixt with Tellow, or too much beliefe and leuitie being joyned with White.

Blew fignifieth Faith, Constancie, Truth in affection, or honorable loue.
Red fignifieth Instace, or noble and worthy Anger in defence of Reli-

gion or the oppressed.

Greene fignifieth Good Hope, or the accomplishment of holy or honourable actions.

Purple or Purpure signifieth Fortitude with discretion, or a most true discharge of any trust reposed.

Tawnie or Tunnis, signifieth Merit or desert, & is a foe to Ingratitude.

Ermine signifieth Religion or Holinesse, and that all aymes are at diuine Obiccts.

Now from these Colours and their mixtures, are derived many Bastard and dishonourable colours, as Carnation, Orangetawnie, Popeniay,
and the like, all which have Bastardly significations, as Crast, Pride,
Wantonnesse, and such like, of which who so is desirous to vnderstand,
let him looke into the French Authors, and he shall gaine satisfaction; for
mine owne part, since they appertaine not vnto Honor, I will heere omit
them, and to those free Spirits which have gained (deservedly) these noble places from these considerations, leave them to their owne elections,
with these few advertisements following.

First, hee that in his Colours shall carry Coat-armour, doth indiscreetly, for he puts that honour to hazard, which he may with more honour keepe in safetie, and inticeth his enemy by such oftentation to dare

beyond his owne nature.

He that in his Colours beareth any one blacke spot and no more, if it be round, square, or of any equall proportion, it shewes some blemish in the owner, and that his life is not void of some notorious Scandall. But if the spot be of vnequall proportion, that is longer or broader one way then another, it signifieth Funerall or deadly reuenge, for such a spot is called an Heirse.

Hee

He that carieth a Word or Motto in his Colours without a Denife, carieth a Soule without a Body: he that carieth a Denife without a Word, carieth a Body without a Soule: he that carieth both Word and Denife, carieth Soule and Body; yet if the Denife carry any humane shape, it is a grosse body: and if the Word containe about three or four words at the most (except it be the latter end or beginning of some Latine verse) it is an impersit Soule: but if both Word and Denise be compleat, and that it is Empresa and not Embleme, yet they are much fitter for Maskes, Triumphs, & Pageants then the field or honorable action; for the true mixture of Colours is denise enough for every Souldier. Lastly, he that cacarieth more colours then two, (except it be some small dash for an especiall note, or the Ensigne of severall kingdomes) carrieth a surcharge, and

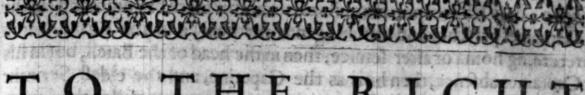
it is esteemed the Ensigne of Folly.

To conclude then with the Office of this Ensigne-bearer, he is to take charge of his Captaines Colours, to keepe them fafely, to attend them duely at all commandements of his Superiors, and to defend them with the vttermost of his life in all dangers whatsoeuer; he shall carry them in fuch place as his Superiors appoint, and according to his Captaines ranke and antiquitie: he shall neuer lodge nor dislodge them but with a Guard, nor at any time shall leave them abandon'd or forsaken : he may in Garrifon challenge the first and principall lodging, & that the Souldiers may know it (to repaire thither) he shall hang the Colours out in some conuenient place for a notice: hee is to chuse vnto him foure or five especiall Gentlemen, who as his mates and companions in all feruices, shall march about him to guard them: if he enter any Towne wall or Breach, he shall plant his Colours on the same: the more tatter'd and ragged they are, the more noble they are; and when any of his Company die, he shall at the buriall traile his Colours after the body to doe honour to the Funerall, but when the body is in the ground, hee shall then to see them vp and difplay them. In the absence of the Captaine and Lieutenant, he commands as absolute Captaine, but in their presence is bound to obey them. Amongst the Spaniards hee is of greater account then the lieutenant; but with vs it is not so, only he is a Gentleman of high worth; and if the dignitie of his vertue answere the worthinesse of his place, there is nothing but Time and the hand of God that can bee able to stay him from being raised to a Captaine.

ors that nonported haven which he may with more bo-

s Colorus beaters are one plade that each or colorus was

for Regoriesta and To to obtain the but



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE THO MAS LORD CROM

WELL of OKEHAM.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Liuetenant.

Assure my selfe (my worthy Lord) that no tune in musicke whatsoeuer can be so pleasant and delightfull in your eares as this song of warre, since euen from your Infancie you have beene rockt and brought a sleepe with her ditties; your noble and valiant Father having no other sullabie to still you, nor no other discourse to inchaunt you, then the repetition of those deeds which by his noble

affistance brought Peace to a miserable, vnnaturall and halfe lost Country. I cannot thinke, but before you had strength fully to thinke, you tooke delight to behold him armed, and when his armes have cirkled you with steele, doubtlesse you have smiled at so glittering an Imbracement; what should then make me hold backe this Dedication: question-lesse nothing, for since you were borne a Souldier, bred a Souldier, and live a Souldier, there is a necessary dependance, that in the rules of charitie you must sometimes listen to old Souldiers discourses.

The Subject I am to Intreat of, is the nature and Office of a Linetenant of a foote Company, who (next the Captaine) is the greatest Officer in the Bandand commandeth the Ensigne and all other Officers below him; the Captaine he only obeyeth, all others obey him, all the vertues that are required in all that we have passed ouer, ought in this Officer to be ful summed & knit firmely together, & if he be truly capable
of his place, he ought to have passed himselfe through all the former Offices, for without their distinct knowledges he cannot aspire to perfection: nay he ought to have the vertue & skill of the Captaine, since in his
absence the entire command is prest down upon his shoulders: his duty is
to oversee both the Officers and whole Band, & that their duties be duely
perfor-

performed, and by his owne examples of patience and diligence, animate all to perseuer in the way of well doing, his armes are as the En fignes: only his weapon is a guilt partezan, his place of command (in the Captaines presence and marching into the field) is in the Reare, but in returning home or after service, then in the head of the Batell, but in his Captaines absence, then he is as the Captaine, and the eldest Serieant supplies his place; he hath power to commit any man vnder the degree of an Officer, and the Officers in the absence of the Captaine; the Lieutenants of Colonels and the greater Officers Linetenants, are in curtefie called Captaines, and as the youngest Captaines of their Regiments may fit in Martiall Courts and speake their oppinions, but have no voy ces. Linetenants are Captaines of the Watch when it comes to their course, and shall that night have a double Squadron of his owne Company, for as two Squadrons make a Serieancie, fo two Serieancies make a Liuetenancie : and indeed the best composition of a Captaines Companic is two hundred Souldiers, a Captaine, a Linetenant, an Enfine : foure Serieants and eight Corporalls, what other leffer commands have crept in amongst vs, hath bin either the necessity of greatnes to content their followers, or the Ambition of Ignorance to carry the title of Captaines; and truely a greater number are cumbersome, so that knowing what is consenient, there the Anchor should be fixed.

Next, to the orderly Gouernment of the Company, and prouiding of all thinges necessary for their best accomodation; it is the Office of the Lieutenant to Traine and Drill his men, according to the art and skill of a good Souldier. In which action, that forme of Trayning is only to be followed which shall be soonest and easiest learned, that agrees with the present discipline of the times, and is of most vse for all kinde of service: As first, to draw his company Fyle after Fyle into a square Battalion, confisting of Rankes and Fyles, placing the Pikes in the midst, and the Shot equally divided on either fide. Hee shall then let them understand that a Ranke, is a row of men placed pouldron to pouldron, their faces being directed all one way, and a Fyle is a sequence of men standing

one behind another, backe to belly, and extending from the first to the last man, it is taken from the French word La file, which fignifies a thred, because men stand longwise and straight like a thred, and thele consist of fingle men downward, as Rankes confift of fingle men ouerthwart. A Ranke may consist of as many men as you please, but a File (how ever the Spaniards and Italians vse it vncertaine) ought neuer to bee aboue ten persons deepe (except it bein marching, or especiall service where aduantage of the ground requireth the contrary) for the first man having discharged his Peece may in the space that nine other men shal discharge

their Pecces one after another, be againe in readynes and make his first place good, there to discharge his Peeceagaine; besides, it is the readiest and best way for the drawing of Groses and great numbers into any

forme what foeuer.

district the country en any Next hee shall teach them the carriage and vse of their armes, especially the Pike, (for the Musquet is in the Office of the Sericant ) the manage wherof he shall devide into these Postures; first three standing, that is, Lay downe your Pike: Take vp your pike: Order your pike: Then sixe marching, as, Advance your pike: Shoulder your pike: Levell your pike: Slope your Pike: Checke your pike: and Traile your pike: and lastly, scaven charging, as, Port over hand: Port under hand: Charge over hand: Charge winder hand: Courch over hand: Courch under hand: Charge against the right soote and draw your Sword over arme.

When these are perfect he shall teach them distance of place in Files and Rankes, as when he would have the Files to march Glosest, then the distance is pouldron to pouldron, or shoulder to shoulder; if but Close, then the distance is a foote and a halfe man from man: If at their order, then the distance is three foote betweene man and man: and if at open-order then the distance sixe foote betweene man and man: so likewise in Rankes Closest is at the Swords point: Close is at three foote, order at sixe foote and open-order at twelve foote. Now there be some that vary in the tearmes but not in the distance, for they wil have Close, order, open-order and Double Distance and not the word Closest, at all; but the scruple is small and may be left to every Commanders discretion.

After this he shall teach them March and Motions: In the first where of is little art more then in observing truly their Rankes and Files, and distance in places: For Motions they vary dinersly and some are no Marches, as when The Souldier turnes but his face on one hand or other or about: Some Motions change place, yet no more then a removing from one ranke to another, or from one File to another, in which, though some remove yet others stand stil, as in doubling of Rankes or doubling of Files: and in this Motion is to be observed that Rankes when they double to the right hand, must ever turne on the left to come to their place againe: and if they be doubled to the left hand they must turne on the right hand to come to their places againe; so likewise Files when they are doubled to any hand, by the doubling of Rankes to the contrary hand they are brought to their first place againe, and so of Rankes

To conclude, there is another Motion to be taught in which all doe move and yet none doe March, and that is the opening or closing either of Ranks or Files & is of great vie when one Ranke should passe through another, or the whole body of the Battalion make a Countermarch, or when the Battell should bee drawne speedily more of one hand or another.

in the fame nature.

Lastly, the Lieutenant shall teach his Souldier how to know all the sounds or beatings of the Drumme, in which he shall make him observe not only what the Drumme doth beate, but also what time and measure hee keepeth, and according to that time and measure so to march slower or faster, to charge with greater violence, or to come of with more speede, also he shall teach them to know when by the Drumme to attend the Captaines directions, when to repaire to their Colours and

when to doe other duties, and as thus by the Drumme in seruice, so by his voyce and the words of directions, in Trayning he shall make them doe whatfoeuer hee pleafeth, and therefore the Liuetenant shall have perfectly in his memory all the words of directions which are accustomably spoken : As, Close your Files, To the right hand : To the left hand : and all these shall be done either Closest, Close, to Order or open Order : Then open your Files, to the right band : To the left hand, and thefe to any order. And thus to open or close Rankes and to any Order, with this observation, that Rankes when they open ought to turne to the Reare and open downeward, and when they close to close vpward; then Files and Rrankes close: Files and Rankes open and these to any order also : then Double your Files : To the right hand : To the left : Aduance your Files, to the right hand : to the left : Aduance by devision, to right hand or left : Files ranke by conversion, to the right hand, to the left: Files ranke, 3.5.7. crc. Shorten your Files to 5.8. &c. Lengthen your Files to 10.12.16. &c. Files countermarch, to the right hand : to the left : Double your Rankes, to the right hand, to the left : Rankes file by conversion : to the right hand, to the left : Rankes ranke 5.7. &c. Middle men double your front: to the right hand, to the left: Double to both by deuision : Rankes countermarch &c. as in Files. Then faces to the right hand, to the left : to both by devision : Faces about : Wheele by connersion to the right hand, to the left : to both by deuision. Charge to the right hand, to the left . to both by denision . Charge to the Front : Charge to the Reare. Charge to both by denision: then to reduce any of these words to the same Order or Station in which the Souldier stood before they were spoken, the word is, Asyon were: And herein is to be observed that in Charging with Pikes halfe the Rankes are but to Charge and the other halfeto carry them advanced or ported, so neare the heads of the formost as they may doe them no anoyance, either in Charging or Retiring, and they must also observe when they doe Charge standing to fall backe with the right foote, and marching to step forward with the left.

Thus I have shewed in a briefe Epistle the large extent of the Livetenants Office, in which if I be either obscure by reason of the compendiousness thereof, or a little confused in snatching here and there at his
duties without setling constantly upon any one; I hope your Lordship
will call to minde it is an Epistle, the lawes whereof alowes me the libertie of familiar speech, not of subtill argument, and for mine owne
part I had rather leave many nice wits unsatisfied, then your minde cloyed or tyred,

The end of the Second Decad.



### TOTHERIGHT HONOVRABLE WILLIAM LORD

#### THE ARGVMENT. Of the Officers of Canalarie.

F I could love Fortune in any thing (my worthic Lord) I should furely loue her in this, that your noble Name & this noble Subject have the chance to meet together, and imbrace in this short Epistle: for it is not onely Warre ( which your Honour I' know will both loue and allowe) but it is the best and nobleft kind of warre with which now I must crowne this third Decad, Warre on Horsebacke,

Warre which is compounded of two most excellent Ingredians, Man which is the neerest to God in his Image, and the Horse which is the neerest to man of all sensible creatures in vnderstanding: the one I know you must love for himselfe, the other I know you will love for the goodnesse of his vse, and both being dedicate to the Service of their King and Countrey cannot but draw a respect of greater valew: If it be so, what can take my pen from the paper, or but draw the shadow of an affright before mine Epiftlestruft me, I think nothing for being arm'd with a purpose which hath no end but vertue, I know I shall encounter with a fauourable Interpretation, and thats to me beyond all merit, all profit.

I hauc (my Lord) in the former Decads, briefly runne ouer all the Inferiour or lower Officers of the Infanterie, in which I have touched their Elections, Vertues, Vses, Duties, it remaineth now that I likewise ascend as many steps in the Canallarie, or Horse-Cornets, and though not in so many and fo large discourses (for that were to make infinite gates to little cities) yet will I to linke and chaine them together; that one shall not peepe (with an halfe face) ouer the others shoulder, but stand open and. plaine, that each may beeknowne by his owne true and naturall complexion.

All

All Horse-Troups commonly doc consist of common Souldiers, Corporals, a Quarter-Master, a Trumpet, a Clerke, a Cornet, and a Lieutenant, These Troups are also of fundry forts, as Men at Armes, or Lanneiers, the armed French Piftoleirs, the Carbines, and the Light-horfe. The first of these are armed at all pieces from the head to the knee, with a close Caske and Curaces of Pistoll-proofe, a Lance in his right hand, a Sword by his left fide, and a case of Pistols at the forepart of his Saddle: the Horfe is caparifon'd with strong Leather, a Headstall, Noseband, and Raynes, with a faire Bit in his mouth, a Saddle plated before and behind with Steele, Brest-plate or Petterell, Crooper, Trappings, and Saker. The Horse himselfe should be of the proudest and best generation, of the largeft Size, his pace trotting, for the most part stoned (though lustic, strong and large Gueldings may be tollerable) and exceeding well ridden and manadg'd for the Warres, being quicke and nimble to start into a swift cariere, easie to stop, and ready to turne on both hands without any diforder or knauish qualitie: the vse of these are to charge vpon Pikes, to breake their Battalions, and to put them into rout and disorder.

The second sort, which are armed Pistolleirs, are in all points to bee accourted like the former Launciers, without any difference, onely instead of the Lance and short Pistoll, he shall have a case of long French Pistols of sull two foot barrell, but not with French locks (for they are oft out of temper, nor knowes every simple and raw Souldier how to handle them) but with good strong Snaphaunces or fire-lockes: they serve for the same vse which the former doe, onely they doe not charge fully so farre home, but having let slie their Pistols, wheele, charge and come on againe, they are of admirable benefit, and doe soone disorder a battell,

and being disordered, they are great executioners.

The third fort which are Carbines, are armed Petronels, they have for Armes a faire Burgonet or Morian on his head, a Gorget, Curaces of proofe, and Pouldrons to the elbowe, but no more: they have Swords by their fides, and at their Saddles faire Petronels, with Flaxe, Touch-boxe, Bullet-bagge, and other necessaries: the Horse should be a strong, nimble tall Guelding, swift, couragious, and well ridden; hee should have a Headstall, Raynes and Bitt, a Petrell, Cropper, and a faire Busse Saddle of the Morocco fashion: the vse of them is as Musquets amongst Pikes, for they wing the Launces or Pistolleirs, and deliver their volleys surther off, and when Battels are broken, they are great executioners.

The last fort are the Light-horse, whose Armes are a Morian or Steele cap for his head, a Gorget, and a light paire of Curaces onely, or else a lacke, a Plate coat, or a Shirt of Male, in his right hand a slender Chasing staffe, and at his Saddle pommell a case of short Pistols: his horse should bee of a fine light, nimble, trotting Guelding of a middle size, and well ridden, his surniture a small Headstall, Raynes and Snafsle, a light Scotch Saddle, a Petterell, and a Crooper: their vse is to gallop foorth and to discouer, to charge upon loose wings of Shot, to search

and

and find out vnknowne paffages, and when Battels are broken, to pur-

fue the chafe, and to finish vp the execution.

To these the Low-countries have produced another fort of Horsemen, which their experience there have found out to be of notable vie, and they call them Dragoons, which I know not whether I may tearme them Foot-Horse-men, or Horse-Footmen: for they are Mulqueriers on horsebacke, and are imployed for the taking and maintaining, or at least for preuenting the enemy from taking of Passages or Foords which leade over Rivers: These mounted Musquetiers are ever eleven in a raunge, and when they come to the Passage, ten of them doe alight, and the eleventh holdeth the Horses, which threeding their bridles one into another, is very orderly done, and with great speed; and when they come to remount againe, they finde their horses in readinesse for them. The Bodies or whole companies euer confift of one hundred & ten men, that is to fay, an hundred for Seruice, & ten to take charge of the Horses.

In Horse-Troupes the common Souldier is Sentinell as in the Footcompany, neither is there any difference (more then the Horse) betweene them and the foot Sentinels, either in order or dutie : they have also their Companies deuided into Camarados or Fellowships, which march, cabin, and feed together; two Camaradas make a Squadron, which Squadron is cuer commanded by a Corporall, and the Office of the Corporall of Horse containeth in all points the full duties of both the Corporall and Serieant of foot. The Quarter-master of Horse is the same which the Harbinger or Furrier of the Foot is: the Trumpet the same which the Drum & Phiph is, onely differing in the tearmes and founds of the Instrument: for the first point of warre is Butte sella, Clap on your saddles; Mounte Canallo, mount on horseback; Tucquet, march; Carga, sarga, an Alarme to charge; Ala Standardo, a retrait, or retire to your Colours; Auquet, to the warch, or a discharge for the watch, besides divers other points, as Proclamations, Cals, Summons, all which are most necessary for every Souldier

both to know and obey.

The Clerke of the Troupe is the same that the Clerke of a Band of Foot is, and the Cornet or Guydon is the same that the Ensigne on foot is, and he ought euer to have two or three faithfull & valiant friends in his Range, which in all charges will have an extraordinary care of his Colours, which is the Captaines honour, and the Companies lafetie. Now to speake a little of the Guydon or Colours themselves, howsocuer in our latter times either by pride or ignorance they have been infinitly abused (euery man taking vpon him to carry what he pleafeth, & in what forme he pleaseth) yet it is most certain that no man vnder the degree of a Banneret may carry them square, but they must bee of Damaske, either with Deuise or without, three foot deep at the top, and sonarrower to the nether end, which must be with two corners or peakes, which whensoeuer he is made a Baron, or Knight Banneret, those corners are cut away, & the Guydon is made square: these Colours are carried upon a Lance, and are in length full two yards or better: this Gentleman which carrieth this

M 2

#### DECAD. 3.

Cornet hath all the Priviledges which an Ensigne of Foot hath, and in his Captaine and Lieutenants absence commandeth the Company, and by either of their deaths ought in right to bee advaunced into their places. In the Quarter hee is lodged as well as his Captaine, and in all Marches hath the leading of the middle File, & followeth next after his Captaine.

A Lieutenant of a Troupe of Horse suiteth in all things with a Lieutenant of Foot, and in the absence of the Captaine commandeth with absolute power, and hath the principall place in all Marches, but in the presence of his Captaine he hath then but the second place; and as his Captaine marcheth on the Head, so he marcheth at the Reare going on vpon Service; but in returning backe from Service, the Captaine marcheth at the Reare, and the Lieutenant on the Head: for the most honourablest place is alwayes that which is neerest to the enemy, and where he is most likeliest to charge; which being proper and most peculiar to the Captaine, the second place must needs consequently follow to bee the right of the Lieutenant.

A Horseman (not having leave to assault) hath no part in the sacke or pillage of a towne, for it is a service to which his Horse cannot approch, and if for the greedinesse of gaine hee for sake his Mounture without leave, then he descrueth no bootie but punishment: yet if his horse shall happen to be slaine (or any other honourable meanes set him on foot) he may then put himselfe into a Foot band, and by a lawfull authoritie both proceed to the Assault, and also by good right receive what benefit so ever shall redound to his fortune. Many other circumstances and ceremonies there be, which because I shall have occasion to touch more amply in other places, therefore I will omit them in this Epistle, and onely conclude with these inferiour Offices of the Cavalerie, which although

I have but poynted at, yet being duely weighed with those of the Foot, which are more largely discoursed, I hope there will little or nothing bee found wanting which may give to any reasonable mind a sufficient satisfaction.

mall of the country and the

property of the floor at

riumas rium carrida

the state of the care beauty

vod : to blesbilled able

To control of the blank



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE PHIL LIPPE LORD

VV HARTON.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Master Gunner.

En and money (my good Lord) are the Sinewes, Nerues and Strength of the warres, but Munition, Shot and Powder are the fuell, Foode, nourisher and maintenance of the warrs, wherefore having intreated of all the Inferior Officers belonging to the bodies of men, and how and in what fort they ought to be imployed; I will now enter into the difcourse of some Inferior Officers belonging to the

munition or matter of Ordinance, and in it I will first begin with the Office or Charge of the Master Gunner who is a principall and Important Officer depending and belonging to the Master of the Ordnance, and is a kind of middle or needfult Officer to take away many troubles and vexations from the Master of the Ordnance, and to command all the Inferior Gunners, Clerkes, Harbengers, Maiorals, Gill-Mafters and other depending vpon the Ordnance, to be carefull in their feuerall places, and to fee that all things expected at their hands be performed without neglect, Sloath or Remisnes, especially all the Inferior Gunners whom hee shall survey very strictly, and see that they be skilfull, ready, and carefull in Charging, Discharging, Leveling, Mounting, and Guarding their Peeces; and he shall also see that all necessary provisions which are needfull, or any way behouefull to the manage or true vse of the same be in no fort wanting; as all kind of Bullets, of all fizes for all Pecces, of all proportions, Powder of all kinds both Serpentine and corne powder: Spunge, Cotton, Match, Linftocks, Priming-Irons, Inftruments, Quadrats and Rules by which to take the leuell and lay the Peece in his true mounture, Taladres and other Engines by which to mount or dismount any Pecce, to take it vp and downe, or to lay it, toffe it, or turne it at his will and plea-

fure; he shall have also all manner of Cartages both of great and lesser forme, all forts of Coffers, Trunkes, and Bexes for the hanfome and ne. ceffary carriage of all needfull implements whatfoeuer depending on his Office, with their senerall characters and markes by which readily to finde out any thinge which hee shall have occasion to vie in any sudden service. It is his Office also to see sufficient prouision made of all forts of Carriages either for the Field or Fleete, and that they be of right shape, strength and fast binding; He shall cause provision to bee made for great store of good and found Axletrees, of which the best are those of Yeigh, the second best, those of Elme, and those which are tollerable are of Ash; there must bee choice of Wheeles well lined with yron and double bound with yron, and strong Nailes whose heads are square, thicke and high, and vnto all these he shall have good stoore of Ladles of severall quantities and severall lengths, Ramers sutable to the boares of all manner of Peeces, and Coines with which to raise vp the breech of the Peece higher or lower as either his will or occasion shall direct and lead him; and besides all these, it is his Office to see prouided great store of yron Crowes, Shouels, Mattocks, Spades, Leavers, Gabions, Baskets, Ropes, and Cordage of all fize, Chaines, old Iron, Nailes, Flints, and what else is proper for the charging of murthering Peeces.

This Officer is to have an especiall care and vigilant respect to any casualtie or danger which may happen by fier, (for they are much Incident and liable thereto) and many miserable and tragicall issues have proceeded from a carelesselooking to the same, therefore the prevention thereof must not alone rest in his owne bosome, but in his diligence and watchfulnes ouer others, and to feethat they place every thinge fo fafely and vnder so surea Guard, that all such mischeines (by probabilitie) may be preuented, and every Canoniere fo ready in his duty, that through his good examples and necessary provisions nothing may happen to breede an afterrepentance; and wherefover these provisions shall either march or abide, he shall be sure to hauca guard of expert Souldiers euer about them, both to repulse the enemie and keepe others off from offering any anoyance vnto them. It is his Office to looke to the goodnes and foundnes of every Peece and that they be free from cracks, galls or flawes, whereby the Peece may be in danger to breake, fince no such accident can happen without the eminent perill and distruction of many men which are about it; and questionlesse in mine owne experience I have knowne many lamentable and Tragicke difasters which have chanced through such escapes, as once I knew a drunken Canoniere who vpon the discharge of a Peece throwing his Linstocke into a barrell of powder which stood behind him, blew vp both himselfe, the wholepoope of the Shippe, and divers others which were about him: Alfo I knew a another Shippe not far from Ramekins in Zeland, which by the breaking of a Peece was sunke in the Sea, and lost both men and goods to a wonderfull great valew, the like hapned at the beseidging of the Force at Breft in Brittany and divers brave Gentlemen were burnt

burnt and spoyled, so that I conclude these accidents being so ordinary and incident to happen, it is very behouefull for the Master Gunner fo far foorth as lies in his power to have a watchfull and carefull eie to the

prevention of the fame.

In some armies and some disciplines the, Fire-master and the Mafer-Gunner are all one without any difference or alteration either in authority or duty, but generally through all armies it is not fo, but they are deuided and made two severall and distinct places, the Fier Mafter being he that hath the art how to make and compound all manner of Fier-workes, and hath the charge for the vie and imployment of the same, and the Master-Gunner only medleth with the Ordnance and the other Engines which I have already reherfed; but thefe latter times in which men have more greedy and free spirits then in the former times, producing men which had a fufficient vnderstanding in both the misteries or arts: they have for the saving of double fees and double wages, brought these two Officers into one, and comprehended

them under the greater Title, which is the Master-Gunner.

The Fire master then (as I said) is an Officer which hath Intermedling and to doe only with the making, mixing and compounding of all manner of fire-workes or wild-fiers, which both in Land-fights, but efpecially in Sea fights are of wonderfull great importance, as in all affaults and iouning of Battels, in Mines, in Trenches, and in the fiering of Townes and Pauillions, in the grapling of Ships, Boordings, or leting fier on the Sailes, Taskles, or any part which it toucheth, fo that as the Fier-Master maketh and compoundeth these wild-fiers, so also he hath the ordring and disposing of them; giving commandment when, where, and in what manner to vie them, for, then wild-fier there is nothing in the warrs of more especiall vse, neither is there any thinge found of greater violence either to destroy or breed affright and amazement in the enemie, for it is a fier not to be quenched, and burneth with that most Implacable fury, that being once fixed, it never leaveth till all be consumed that is round about it; it is sometimes fixed voto Arrowes & fo shot into townes, amongst Tents or where any occasions are offerd: It is sometimes made up in balls and cast amongst the assaults either at a breatch, the entrance of a gate, or where any presse or throng are gathered together, and sometimes it is cast abroad and at large in a confused manner, when men will scower a Trench or Ditch, or drive men our of a strength which is open and weakely guarded; and for this purpose the Fier-master must not be without very great store of Arrowes, Balls, and Boxes of fron, which being-full of sharpe bearded Pikes may catch hold and sticke in whatsoeuer it toucheth, whereby the fier once catching hold, will not after be put out or extinct till all things neare it be consumed.

Now that there may be no spare or want of this matter, but that al things may be plentifull and in great perfection; It is the Fier-masters charge to prouid that he have alwaies in his Office great flore of Pitch, Tarre,

Aquanita.

Aquanita, Arfnicke, Mercurie, Brimstone, Cole of younge Haffell; Sale. peter, Salt-niter, Roffin, Waxe, Campbire, Tutia, Cale: vina, Sal-gemma, Terpentine, Vinegar, Alexandrina non preparata, Rasapina, beaten Glasse, Bay-Salt, unflact Lime, Bole Armonicke, the fyllings of Iron, Sarcacolla, Afpaltum Indaicum, the powder of Pygions dange, the powder of, Bay-tree Stalker, and divers Oyles, as Hogs greafe, Linfed Oyle, common Lampe Oyle, Oyle of Iuniper, Oyle of Eegges, and the Oyle of Salt peter: and these shall bee 20comodated in severall bagges, Bottles and Glasses according to their severall natures, also hee shall have under his charge, barrels of peeblestones, morter-peeces and other Engines of like nature, and with these ingrediens, he shall make his fire workes according to art, casting some in one forme and some in another, of which there are a world of presidents; and Time every day (according to the wit of man) bringeth forth new and nottable Inventions: for indeede it is a subject of that bewitching nature, that the more a man looketh and laboreth into it, the more and more greater mischeiues he shall still finde to flow and arise from it.

To conclude, these Officers (whether they be joynt or seperate, whether they be two, or but one, yet they ought to be exceeding Ingenious, very carefull, daring and faithfull, for they have much to doe with Invention, more with mischances, and most of all with perills and dangers: As for their Trust it is so great that the very health and safety of

Armies lye continually in their fingers.

Both these Officers have their dependance vpon the Master of the Ordnance, and are to attend his directions in all occurrents and occasions whatsoever, therefore it is fit they be still necre vnto his person, and that whatsoever proceedeth from him they see presently personned with

faithfulnes and diligence.

Here I might amplifie my discourse and enter into the discouerie of other arts belonging to this Office, as the mounting of Artillerie, the taking of a true leuell, & the weights and proportions both of the powder and Bullet, with many other secrets which relie vpon that knowledge, but I reserve that for a more sit and convenient place, knowing it will suite much better and more propperly agree with another Epistle.

may de picket in a full sy ready afficiated to is the fine ready a height open miles to the promise of the first section of the first s



# TOTHERIGHT HONORABLE, FRANCIS LORD WILLOVGHBYE OF PARHAM.

#### THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Trench-Master.



Hough (fweet Lord) the tendernesse of your yeares might challenge a more milde and softer Subject then this harsh and rough clangor of affrightfull Warre, and deep-amazing Alarmes, yet when I call to mind the excellencie of your Noble Blood, and see how it springs out of the two heroicke Fountaines of Rutland and Willoughbie, (the first where-of Nature and dutie commands me to honour, the

other the goodnes of their owne vertues) me thinks I see that strong promise of great Spirit within you, that it seemes to say, If the great Henrie of France playing amongst the Boyes of Pan was at ten yeares old chosen for a Generall, why not you (at as young) be fit for Souldierly cogitations, doubtlesse you are, doublesse you will be, and in that assurance I am bold to knocke at your eare with this short and plaine Epistle, which when you have pleased to reade, if you finde nothing in it for your present vse, then say it by, tis ten to one but ere an age or lesse be consumed, you shall find occasion to review it; and though you finde nothing absolute and rare, yet something there may be in it worthy your observation and knowledge.

The next degree or Station aboue the two Officers last named, and who also is a dependant upon the Master of the Ordnance, taking from him most of his commands and directions, is the Trench-master, who by some (and not unproperly) is called the Engine-master, the qualitie of whose Office consistent generally in matter of Fortifications, Immurings, and intrenchments, for he is both to fortisse the Campe, and also to make the approaches. It is he that must communicate and mixe Art and Nature so well together, that lending to either the perfections which it wanteth, he makes the universall Body of his worke absolute and impregnable,

for as Nature in some places may bee a great affistance vnto him for the perfecting of his worke, so Art in other places must either take all authoritie vpon her, or the whole worke bee left naked and weake to any approch or affault of the enemy: so that in this Officer or Trench-master must bee a knowledge (at the first apprehension or viewing) how much Nature can any way helpe him in his worke, and how much Art is necessary to the bringing of Nature to the fulnesse of perfection: for it is to be vnderstood that Nature is a good houswife, and saueth much charges in all Fortifications, when Art is a prodigal, and saueth out both coine and mens labours, therefore in this mans Office is required a good husbanding of both their conditions, and a finishing of the purpose he goeth about at as easie and small a charge as may be.

He is an Officer at whose hands are required a two fold dutie, the one of Safetie, the other of Hurt or Annoyance: for to his friends he must be a strength and safeguard, and to his enemies a plague and mischiese. It is requisite that in his election he be chosen a man of learning and experience, especially skilfull in the Mathematickes, and all Geometrical rules and proportions, and that he have the authority of long practise & sound knowledge to countenance and desend what soeuer hee vindertaketh, for in his Braine and Brest, and the strength of his profession consiste the safetie of the whole Armie which is lodg'd within the compasse of his intrenchments, for his Art must be their wall of desence, and by the

fquare of his judgement is their fecuritie loft or made perfect. When therefore the plot of Ground for emcamping is appointed and chosen out by the Lord Marshall, and that the Quarter-master hath deuided it into fundry large quarters for the generall receit of the whole Armie, then shall the Trench-master forthwith stake out the vttermost verge and extreamest part thereof for the best advantage of the Campe, and the greatest hurt and annoyance that can be to the enemy, which done, according to the best proportions which will agree with the nature of the ground, and those formes into which the Marshall and Quarter-masters have formed the Campe, he shall draw his Intrenchments and Fortifications, girdling and furrounding the fame in fuch manner about, that the enemy may in no wise make any attempt thereupon without his certaine losse and hindrance, and making all his approches and entrances to the Campe with such intricate Art, and vnder such Guards and defences of its owne strength, that the enemy may neither have hope nor abilitie at any time to give vpon the same, but when hee shall returne backe repulft and laden both with shame and dishonour.

I have in mine owne experience knowne some principall great Commanders, as namely Sir William Pelham (a noble and renowned Souldier) who was Lord Marshall in my Lord of Leicesters time in the Low countries, and after him Sir Francis Vere, who both by experience and observation were wonderfully skilfull in this kind; and notwithstanding both of them had most excellent Officers vnder them, and men of exceeding rare knowledge in these practises, yet in these great & important affaires

of

of Fortifications and Affurances in guarding of the Campe, they still performed all things by their owne proper Commaund and directions, neither could any danger (how eminent or certaine focuer) either in the viewes, approches, or disconery of places fit to be fortified, deterre or keepe them backe, but notwithstanding they both received many great, and almost deadly wounds, yet still they performed those services in their owne persons. But this was the perfection of their knowledge and the absolute rarenesse of their courage (which is not alwaies found out in men of their high place and commaundement) therefore it is expedient that in enery Army there should be this distinct and especial officer, both for the generall fafetie of the Souldier; that hee may march without hazard to the approches & outward skirts of the campe, which (as it were) outfaceth the enemy, and also being there, may be defended against any Sallies, Stratagems, or other annoyances, as also to have a freedome of power to mount their Ordnance at pleasure, and to make Mounts to receiue the Artillery; also to raise Canaliers, to digge Mines vnder earth or running Trenches to any Curtaine or Bulwarke, whereby either the whole frame, or at least the Orcchion, Tronera, or Pendent may bee molefted or destroyed, beside a world of other new deulces, both to secure the camp, and repulfe the enemy, when he shall undertake any attempt against it.

This officer must have a ready and pregnant skill in casting out the true proportion of all mamer of Trenches, forming the depths and breadths thereof according to Arrand the imployment for which they were first framed. It behoues him to know how to forme and modell out all forts of Bulwarks, making them large and massie, how to make election of his earth for toughnesse and firmenesse, how to ramme it, pile it, and in case the mould be light and subtill, then in what fort to temper and mixe it, and to bring it to a body that shall be tough, closse, and sollid; then how to cast his ditches both about and betweene each seuerall Bulwark, how to frame his Gabions, Parapets, Tenakas, Tyzeras, Dients, and Casamats, how to make his Ports or Gates, and in what fort to fortifie them with Draw-bridges, Rastels, Senacenescas, or Porteluyses; then where to make his Terraplene or places of Retrait; and lastly how to modell and smooth out the Campania raza or plaine Champaine without all the workes beforefaid, by which the enemy may have no ground of advantage wherby to disturbe the Campe, Towne, Fort, or other place which hee hath fortified.

To conclude, it is the office of this Trench or Engine master to be skilfull and experienced in all manner of Plots and Platformes what source, and that he is able by his owne vnderstanding and industry to accommodate & apply himselfe to any kind of Situation or piece of ground whatsoeuer, knowing how either to fortisse or supplant it vpon the first view, being therto called either by his place or any especiall commandement.

In France tiro Noblemen of great and good Blood, the one called Count Pedro of Normandy, and the other the Lord of Brey, have been exceeding famous, & much commended for the fingularitie of their know-ledge.

ledge in this excellent Art, and in our Nation I doubt not but those two I first spake of, namely, General Vere, and Marshall Pelham, are notable Prefidents to all ages that shall follow, of the rare and hidden perfection which is contained in the same : or should the dulnesse of our last times grow fo blockish or stupid, as to forget men of their Fame and Merit, yet to doe this Iland honor, I could revive the names of two others, who in this Arthaue not been ouerrunne by any strangers, that is to say, the two honorable Knights, Sir Richard Hanfard, and Sir Iofias Bodley, being both famous Schollers, expert Souldiers, and rare Mathematicians; and indeed having had that exquisite benefit by Travel, that few in their daies could outstrip them, especially Sir Richard Hansard, who in the warres of Hun. gary, Poland, & Transylvania, had reaped that knowledge and experience which brought backeto his King and Countrie a large and plentiful tribute, and to himselfe a most worthy and fit imployment. Neither was the other much inferior, who in all the warres of his time was never out of action, but so ioyned his studie with practise and experience, that hee bound his Countrey infinitely vnto him; and howfoeuer respected, yet questionlesse none euer yet better deserued.

I could here enter into a very large field, and find a world of excellent plants, which grew and flourished in this Art, as namely, Dexter, Diggs, Smith, and many others who were good Schollers, most excellent Mathematicians, and rare Engineers, but the discourse of their works would aske rather a whole Volume then the last part of this short Epistle. Let it then suffice, that the Trench-master or Engineer (of whom I have intreated) having the perfections already recited, and to them added a speciall circumspection, to regard both the outward and inward situation of places, and how to provide remedies against every annoyance, whether it consist in Altitudes, Longitudes, or Latitudes, or in any other frame or

forme whatsoeuer, that then without all question he is a man of skill: and whensoeuer he is called vpon by any especiall commandement, he may without amazement take vpon him the Protection of the Armie.

the Distance of the Control



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE ED MOND LORD SHEF-

FIELD of BYTTERVVICE.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Wagon-Master.



He warrs (my much honored Lord) hath long fince both by Sea and Land challenged you for a noble Master, neither hath Peace at any time made you forget either her Goodnes or Necessity, for in your worthy Viceroy hipe when nothing but Olives Were planted about every mans habitation : yet then you kept the Laurell in remembrance, and by errecting a Schoole of warre in your Government

shewed Peace how excellent a thing it was still to keepe War as her most trustiest servant. This (noble Sir) hath incouraged me to dispatch this Epistle vnto you, and to entreat you when it shall bring a blunt Souldiers falutation, to conceive that notwith standing the Barbarous opinion of the contrariety of Armes and Learning, (making it almost a worke of Impossibility to lodge them both together in one person) yet it is but an vnreasonable Paradox, and rathertaken from those which know Ful rie, then such as would vnderstand Courage, to which, though your honord selfe be to your selfe the best wirnes (being a possessor both of the one and the other vertue) yet will I labour to aproue in this volume, that as Mars and Mercurie; there cannot live together two more faithfull or fayrer Companions.

The fucceeding Office to which this Epifle directs me, is that of the Waggon-master or Carriage-Master being an Inferior Officer belonging to the Linetenant Generall of the Horse, of whose election there ought to be a great and especiall care, for he ought to be a man of exceeding good Confideration and Trust; well staied in manners and discreete in all his actions, for to his charge is delivered the conduct and guard of all the Baggage and Necessaries belonging to the whole Armie, which being either purloyned by Knaues, fackt by the Enemie, or any wayes difmem-

membred and loft by negligence of his cie or care of well looking vnto. the Souldier is spoyled both of his foode and eternall comforts, and be. ing made a prey to all extreamity, his life is in a manner forfeited and the armic weakened, to the great loffe of their affaires & the diffionor of the Generall vinder whose conduct they remained ; whence it comesthat this Officer ought to be chosen with a more then ordinary strictnes and the care to be vied therein should weigh an equall ballance with any Officer of his nature and condition: nay, in some cases more or lesse, according to the consequence of his affaires and occasions, for in long and tedious marches in an enemies Country that is poore and walted or barreine and depopulate, (so that there is neither hope of supplie nor assurance of any Foode or Comfort) there is this Officer of great import and without the affistance of his place, the armie can but a little while continue either in strength or abilitie, for it is his partage and tharge that must calme all rough and vowholesome Seasons, must make barren places fruitfull, and indeede must find furniture and reliefe for all the adversities either of Time or Fortune. But in good and plentifull Countries. where the seasons are milde and pleasant, the Haruest ripe and swelling, Townes peopled, and every corner (as it were) a Storehouse of wholesome Foode and Raiment, there the Souldier may bee more bold, and though this Officer bee wanting, yet may the Souldier still be his owne puruior, and day by day replenish both his body and knapsacke with all matters necessary for his owne accomodation; besides, in these plentifull and well peopled places, where there is no want of any thing but that which should make abundance infinite, there the Armie shall euer haue great resort of Victuallers, Vianders, Sutlers and all occupations to relieue enery want before it be complained of; so that ving them with any proportion of affection or moderation, though this Officer be wanting yet shall the Armie not feele any sufferance vnder the hand of Necessity.

To come then to the perticular charge and nature of his Office hee hath (as before I faid) the Charge and Commandmend of all Horfes, Mules, Garrons, Waggons, Carts, Sleads and other implements whatforuer, to carry & conuey all the needfull Baggage either of Meate, Drinke, or Apparrell which any way dependeth upon the Armie: and not only appointeth vnder him all fuch ministers as shall see the same mounted and laden out of every severall quarter, but also being so furnished, placeth them in aray and Rankes as he purposeth they shall March, designeing enery man to his place and order, which no man shall dare or prefume to breake, vpon paine of either having so much money defaulted and taken from his wages, or else some other bodily punishment at the discretion of the Waggon-Master. And that these Necessaries or Baggage of the Armie may be conveyed with greater safetie, the Officers of the Horse and Commanders of Infantrie, are to allow vnto the Waggon-Master a good and sufficient Guard both of Horseand Foote to secure the Luggage and to bring it safe to the Rendinous, where it is to bee

valaden in the Tenerall Quarters. With this Baggage doth march all women of what qualitie focuer, whicher they be Wives, Laundreffes, or Sernams: all Boyes belonging to Horse or Foore, and all base and idle persons being generally comprehended vider the title of Baggage people Chow necessary or viefull focuer) and indeedethey are Creatures of a most base and vnhappy condition; none vnder heaven induring greater flauerie or contempt; especially the Horse Boyes, who are vp early and downe late, that eare little and labour much, that finde no end of their trauell nor beginning of their rest, to whome the day istoo short for their lourneing, and the night not longe enough to finde out their Masters prouisions; Forrage being farre to seeke, Straw hard to get, Boughes for their Cabines ill to come by many times in danger of Bullets with ranging; wants drawing on floathfull ficknesses, stoathfull ficknesses speedy death, and indeede but in death I know little they have to call their comfort, so that to conclude of a thousand; what with the Bullet, Sicknes, Sword, Famine & Gallowes and other milehances (except their Masters bee much the honester men ) scarce one lives to boast he is as old as the horse he keepeth. Only some blacke Swanne amongst the rest (who hath beene by God strangely preferred) I have observed to come to advancement, and from Souldiers Horse-boyes prove valiant and brave Captaines, but it hath beene like Winters Thunder, hardly about one Cracke in a mans remembrance, and therefore they may well be accounted amongst the Baggage, for in the world are not found creatures of a more Baggage nature; their education in the warres and their continuall early exercise in body, so steelling their dispositions, that if they live to come to any mature age, some proue Freebooters (betweene whom and the Deuill hardly goes the fheares) some Fugitines, and some (whom God endueth with more spetiall grace) Souldiers, yet of them the least and hardest to be found out in the compasse of mans memory.

Now for the propper place whereinthis Officer is to march with all his Baggage and provisions, (although the Range and Marshalling of the vnruly company be in the discretion of the Waggon-master) yet is hisowne place at the appointment of the Serieant Maior, who is to confider in the marching of the Armie, vpon what poynt thereof the enemie is most likely to assaile; as if it be vpon the head or vantguard, then all the Baggage shall march in the Reare; and if it be on the Reare, then shall the Baggage take their place in the Van, for where the greatestafetic is, there this necessary-weakenesse should ever finde their security: so likewise if the ememie should give vpon the right side of the Battell, then must the Baggage passe vnto the left, and if vpon the left side, then must it likewise passe vnto the right: thus shall the Battell still become a wall to their goods, and where the strength and abilitie thereof confisteth, there shall their goods and weaker persons remaine as in a mansion meetest of all for their safety, neither can this luggage, munition nor dispised persons (vpon any assault or ioyning with the enemie) bee any

hindrance

hindrance to the armie, but they shall have full liberty to exercise their armes without being anoyed or falling soulevpon the Waggons.

The Horsemen which are to guard the Baggage ought to be either light horse or else Carbines, or it it might be a company of such Dragons as were but lately produced, which are certaine Horsemen lightly armed, carrying short snaphaunce Peeces whose barrels are no more but inst sixteene inches longe; and board at full Musquet boare: which taking a Musquet charge, will carry (as all proofe can witnes) directly

twelue score point-blanke.

These Shot shall scower before the baggage, that if any of the ene. mies stragling Horse shall offer to make Incursions vpon them, they may instantly resist them and beate them backe to their maine bodies: But if it be so that the armie march in a place of safety and where there is no danger of the enemie, then shall the luggage have their place in the middest of the vauntguard alwaies, with a stronge guard of pikes and shot continually about it, and the Waggon-master in the head thereof to give directions vpon any alteration, which will be very commedious for the Souldier, who by this forwardnes of the Baggage shall not stand to waite and expect, but finde his Tent pitcht assoone as he commeth, and all things which can accomodate his wearines to be ready and prepared Laftly it is the Office of the Waggon-master to looke to the goodnes and sufficiencie of all the Waggons and other carriages which hee hath in his charge, to see that the bodies be whole and tyght, the wheeles ftronge and well bound, the axletrees vnftrained and well clouted, and all the harnes and implements belonging to the cattell for draught that it be firme, new and vntatterd; and to this end he shall ever have neare and about himmen of these trades, as Codders, or Knackers, Cartwrights, Smiths and the like, with whatfocuer is needfull for their vie (which hee shall receive by appointment from the master of the Ordnance,) and so he shall keepe every thinge perfect and in good order, both to the Gene-

ralls good, the Souldiers profit, and his owne reputation, for howfocuer fome other smallerthinges depend vpon his knowledge;
yet these I have already shewed, are the maine substance
of his cares, and the full duties which are
expected in his Office.

with a land of the land of the land

To The beginning to the beautiful and at the performance of the perfor



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE, VVIL LIAM LORD PAGET OF BEAVDESER T.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Forrage-Master.



O little am I knowné to your Lordship, that much I dare not presume from you, only that honest purpose which dare guide mee, will I hope (seconded by your vertue) informe you, that nothing either in this Epistle I offer, or in the end that I assume, will, or deserue your contempt or amazement. Casar (though in a goodlier Table) was content to expresse himselfe by the like figure; and if I, labouring

to be his Scholler, repeat what lessons I have learned in our latter contentions, be it your goodnes to vouchsafe me hearing, and though the Map be much too scant to expresse the great world I would decipher, yet may your noble acceptation make vnto it so perfect a Scale, that without any intricacie or hardnesse you may take the vttermost measure of all my purpose.

I am conducted in this Epistle to the Office and dutie of the Forrage-master, or Provided of la Cauallo, being another great officer depending vpon the Lieutenam-Generall of the Horse, and from him is to receive a competent Guard of Light-horsmen or Dragoones mixt with some certaine Foot-Pike and Shot, which may protect and defend his Forragers when they goe foorth to seeke and provide all things necessary for the reliefe and accommodation of the Horse-quarter.

The especiall dutie of this Forrage-master is (after he hath his Guard in readinesse) by the sound of a Trumpet, to call together all his Forragers or servants, which are to be imployed in this labour, being a compound Rabble of all manner of meane & inferior servants, as Horsemens Boyes, Footmens Boyes, Boores, common Lackeys, and the like; and for such Horsemen

men as have no boies, they must Alternis vicibus (being of one Camerade) ferue themselues, some at one time, some at another, till euery man have done his perfect dutie. When these are thus gathered together, they shall be armed both for defence & seruice, with Sythes, Sickles, Hooks, Axes. Browne bils (if the Army have any fuch weapon) or elfe with old Hal. berts, or the like necessary tooles, as also good Swords and other engins, some to mow and cut downe Hay, Straw, young Corne, Pulse, Grase, or the like, some to hew downe boughes and young watlings to make Cabins. and some to force dores and windowes, or to teare and pull down whatfocuer withstands them. Being thus accounted, the Forrage-master shall mixe with them a convenient number of Cariages, Sleads, Tumbrels, and horses of burthen, to bring home such provisions as he shall get, and then putting them into the heart or center of his Guard; hee as their chiefe leader shall conduct them forth to such convenient places as he knoweth will affoord him those necessary commodities which hee seeketh, and herein he shall have a great respect to the time and season of the yeare, as if it bee in the Spring, then he shall seeke for the earliest grasse, the tender yong blades of Wheat, Rye, or any thing that hath bin preserved greene all the Winter, as the leaves of Coleworts or Cabbages, the rootes and branches of Carats, or any other sweet root that is pleasant and not sharpe or biting: for of these horses will feed, grow fat, and the more they labour, the more wholesome it is for their bodies. If it bee in the Summer he shall seek out for young Hay or Grasse ready to be mowne, for Corne of all kinds which is halfe ripe, & for any Pulse that is sprung vp although it be not codded. If it be in the Haruest, then he shall seeke forth all kind of ripe corne or pulse, especially Oats, Wheat and Barley: for the eares will feed the horse, and the straw will serue for litter; for ripe Rye it will make a horse scoure and shoot, and the lesse he eateth, the better it will bee both for his body and service. Lastly, if it bee in the Winter, then shall the Forrage-master seeke into Barnes and houses, and no graine, corne, hay or straw commeth amisse whatsoeuer, so that as foone as he hath gotten a proportion futable to his defire, hee shall then cause it to bee trust vp and laid into the Carrages, and so being brought home to the Campe, it is the Forrage-masters office to see it equally deuided into every severall Horse-quarter. But if this cessement or taxation of horse-forrage be drawne from the friend, then it is the office of the Forrage-mafter to Rate the Boores, and both to fet prifes of their graine, and all other horse-prouisions, and also appoint in what marmer it shall be brought to the Campe, and then how to be distributed to every quarter, without partialitie or extortion.

The Forragers are to attend upon the Forrage-master, in all these marches after a decent and comely fort, that is to say, they shall all goe out together, and not stragling or disperst one from another; for if the enemy doe lie any thing necre at hand, it is the principall advantage hee looketh for to cut off such loose desperates; and therefore at the sound of the Trumpet they shall all march together (guarded as aforesaid) and so con-

tinue

tinue till their labour and service be sinished without any separation, for seare of sudden slaughter or surprise, then which there is not an action of greater danger: for if any of these loose sellowes should happen to be taken prisoners, and so the enemy wrest from them some secret matter depending on the Army, it might be a mischief to which a thousand of their lives were not able to make a convenient recompense. & the advantage which the soe might gaine thereby, doth so farre outweigh all the benefits of their future service, that they have nothing but curses and disdaine to live with them ever after.

As thus the Forrage master is to fee them march foorth together and likewise keepe together, without disordering the body by any quitting or stealing out of their Ranks; fo is helikewise to have care that they all come hometogether, for these Foreagers have many times that wickednes of disposition within them, that if the eye of the chiefe Officer once neglect them (fo as they can make escape from the Company) presently they hide themselves in passages and obscure waies, disguising their faces with Scarfes or close Caskes, and so lie in wait to rob and spoile their owne fellowes, who being newly arrived at their quarter, and intic't by the pleafantnes of the ayre to walke abroad and view the bounds or borders of the Countrey adiacent, are presently by an aduantagious blow, or an vndreampt of bullet on the fudden knockt downe to the earth, and so by our owne straglers dispoyled, robbed, and sometimes murdered; which to preuent, there is nothing so availeable as the diligent care and vigilance of the Forrage-matter, whose eye is the onely salue which can cure these mischieses: for by looking to their escapes, and most severely punishing all those which shall first attempt to offend in this nature, they will quickly bee reduced to order, and feare, which is the terror of every base and vader-valued courage, will like a sharp Bit raine them in, & keep mischiefe in despight of his owne will from running into disorder.

It is also the office of this Forrage-master, when he approcheth any of those places where he findeth (in part or whole) the commodities he seeketh, to have a circumspect regard to the situation of the place, and in what manner those commodities grow there, as also what advantage the ground or any place neighbouring necre vnto the same, may have for the placing and concealing of any ambush or other stratageme which may put himselfe and his company in danger, and finding any suspition or doubt thereof; it is his part presently to collect what ground of advantage may againe relicue himselfe if any such vnlookt for accident should happen; and having armed himselfe against the worst of all disastrous suppositions, he shall yet notwithstanding dare to engage either himselfe or his company further then he hath a safe and assured retrait, whereby to bring them off in despight of all the politike engines which the subtiltie of the enemy can deuise.

Lastly, when the Forrage-master bringeth hom his Bootie (which is all necessary provisions belonging to the Horse-troupes) he shall (before it be shared) make in his owne account a true value and estimation thereof,

and if he find it bee in any great measure or large quantitie, so that the abundance amounteth to a very plentifull ouerplus, then shall hee first of all deduct out of the whole Groffe a competent proportion to ferue all the Troups of horse for the present, and then (the necessitie of their occafions, and the profit of the Armie defiring fuch frugalitie) he shall cause the rest to be stored and laid up in some convenient provision house, and thence weekely (by his inferiour Officers ) have it delivered out to the Clerks of the Troups without any lauish expence, or vnthrifty consump. tion of the same : and questionlessea better care cannot be preserved for I have knowne in mine owne experience, when at our first fitting downe before a place befieged, comming vnexpected and before fuch provisions could bee taken from our possessions, wee have found wondrous great plentie of all forts of these accommodations, yet having carelesly wasted and confumed the fame, without remembring any necessities that might arise from future times; and being by the stubbornenesse of the enemy fixt to the continuance of a lingring Siege, we have vindergone fuch penury and want, that it hath bin questionable whether the Besieger or the Befieged have fustained at the hand of Fortune the greater calamitic, whereas the smallest spark of Care in the beginning, had fixt such a sure nayle in the wheele of Fate, that nothing would have troubled vs which had the least shadow or shape of Necessitie.

Many other complementall Observations might bee added to the nature of this office, but being partly immateriall to my purpose, and partly such neere dependants to the things already discussed, that the one is no more but an exposition of the other, I will neither bee tedious to your Lordship, nor a breaker of order in the method I have vndertaken, but

thut vp mine Epistle with this Conclusion, That who soeuer doth as much in this Office as is already deliuered, albe hee doe not all that can be imagined, yet he shall doe as much as any necessary Reason can be expected.

TO



## HONOR ABLE, THO-MAS LORD DARCY

OF THE SOVTH, NOW Viscount Colchester.

#### THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Victuall-Master.



Or me to Coine vnto your Lordship any new complement whereby to infinuate more then mine Ig-norance vnderstands, were a thing stranger then my strangenes vnto you; Therefore I only take by the hand (in this place) the necessitie of your noble Range (to which I am bound) and the goodnesse of your honorable minde (which I know will give allowance to every worthy study) these I hope

shall excuse mee; and for these I know you will so farre know me, as (in reading this Epistle) you shall finde me worthy your notice, more I will not begge; lesse I dare not desire, and this I hope I shall ever reape from your noble vertue.

The next Officer affending in this warlike legend (and with which I am to account in this Epistle) is that of the Victuall-Master, Pronant-Master or Purueyer of victuals for the whole Body of the Armie, and is indeede a principall and eminent person holding a place both of great Trust, Care and Estimation; his generall dependance is vponthe Armie and the Generalls especiall Commandments, but the perticular looketh most ar the Treasurer; for he supplyeth all those necessities which he is not able to furnish.

The ellection of this man ought to be out of the best fort of Gentlemen, having in him both the dignity of Blood and the glory of vertue, with the one to feele and pitty mens wants and extreamities, and with the other to give a speedy, honest and an wholesome remedy : he ought to be endued with three especiall vertues, as first Wisdome (which he is to exercise in making his provisions,) then Temperance, (which is to gouerne him in the expence of his commodities according to order) and laftiv

lastly Frugalitie, (by which to increase and keepe good his store in an honest, profitable, and thrifty manner) he should be a man of yeares and great experience both in the natures of men, the necessities of the warrs. and the proportioning of allowances; but especially he must be a man notably well scene in all manner of houshold provisions, knowing both the Rates of all manner of victualls, the places where best to find them. and the fafest and wholesomest way how to keepe and preserve them. he must not in any wise be a Begger, for he that hath neglected to feede himselfe, will either little regard how hee feedeth others, or elle so ex. treamely feed himselfe first, that other men will sterue whilst he is in fur. feting. To conclude, he must in no wise be a hard harted or couctous person, for Couetousnes is the mother of many vices, and if this Officer. either to gaine at cheape Rates by vn found and infufficient victuals, or to keepe them (till the extreamity of times doe compell the Souldier to acceptthem) store them till they rot and turne to putrifaction, and then force them on those where deniall can not be-heard nor relieued; then belieue it, this man doth his Prince and Country most wicked service. hath the curse of the living and the blood of many slaughter'd Soules hanging at his elbow, for from this ground (aboue others) doe mutenies and deuisions amongst Souldiers arise, which is seldome apeas'd but with death; and from hence in mine owne experience I have observed two fuch infurrections, that they started the whole Armie with amaze-

Touching the nature and qualitie of this Officer, he is to make prouision for the Armie of all kind of victualls whatsoever, carefully and faithfuly, and for that purpose is to haueat every Rendinous or place of Garrisson, a fit and convenient Store-House, in which to pile vp and accomodatethe same, whether it be Bread, Bisket, Cheese, Butter, Fish, Beefe, Bacon, Meale, Peafe or any other prouision; which according to warrants from the Superior Officers, (nominating the number of men in lift of euery company) he shall deliver out proportionably according to fuch a rate for every man Per diem, and being stil assured to keepe his proportions within the compasse of the Souldiers common allowance of ordinary lendings, as for example; If the Souldiers lendings be after the Rate of Three Shillings by the weeke, then shall the victuall-master allow him victualls at the rate of fourepence by the day and a penny for drinke, which amounts to two shillings and eleauen pence the weeke, the remainder when the Captaine commeth to rekeon with the Treasurer, by the Victuallers certificates shall (or at least should) be an arrerage due to the Souldier; and thus according to the proportion of any wages, and in this expending of victualls it is to be supposed that every Victuall-Master ought to accommodate his victualls vnto the place in which they are spent; as if it be in Garison or settled Campe, then hee shallspend those victualls which are worst for carriage and most troublesome for the Souldier to dresse; as Butter, Bread, Fish or the like, except his plenty be great, and then he may let them have two daies flesh,

as ether Beefe or Baton, for Sundaies and Thursdaies two daies Butter as on Monday & Tuefday; one day Cheefe as Wenfday; and two dayes Fifth as Friday and Safterday 11 Josewi has banot allaufiveid open or

But if it be in Marching or Iourneying, then hee shall give them the victuals which is most easie for carriage, and the longest lasting, as Bisker, Beefe ready boyld, cheefe, or the like. Now for the proportions how much conveniently may fustaine a mana day (though they must be rated according to the plenty of the store and the prizes by which they are attained) yet for example fake, and according to the experience of those warres which I have feene, halfe a pound of Bisket, and halfe a pound of Butter hath beene a fit daies proportion for one man, or a pound of Bread and halfe a pound of Beefe or else Bacon; a full daies proportion, or otherwise halfe a pound of Bisker and a pound of cheese; likewise a pound of Bisket and a Poore-John betweene two men for one day, ortwo pound of Bisket and a Haberdine betweene foure men for one day is a great proportion, halfe a pound of Bisket and foure herrings is one mans allowance for one day, and so is a quart of Pease boyld, or a pint of Rice

with the ordinary allowance of Bisket.

The Victuall-Master, whilst he is in the friend Country may send forth his warrants or potents for the bringing in of all manner of victualls an their ordinary prizes, and in such manner (if the Souldier receive his wages in money) he shall retaile it backe without advantage; for no exaction in any wife should be taken on the Souldier, especially in case of foode, for it is the nourisher of his strength and courage, and that being abated he can neither march well nor fight well; as thus victualls are brought in by the Friend, so being in the enemies Land, it is the Office of the Pictaler to consider the qualitie and season of the place, for if the Country it selfe be rich and well furnished, and therewithall suddenly Inuaded; no doubt but great plenty of provisions will be found, vpon which it is his Office to ceaze, and withall care to fee it ordered and preserved for the best benefit and vse of the Armie, and to that end hee is continually to have attending on him in good pay at least fixe Substitutes or vnder Officers to keepe accounts and deliuer out prouisions, besides good and sufficient Bakers, Butchers, Fishmongers, Hucsters and Coopers, besides Porters and luggage Carriers, to rummage and order things according to his directions, and doubtleffe it is found in the warres that there is greater husbandry in preserving things then in prouiding, since plenty and scarcity are these two extreames which oftest doe make Souldiers Wastfull; For in Abundance it is the nature of course bred creatures to imagine that the spring hath no bottome, and in the time of penury assoone as the chearefulnesse of reliefe but once shines vpon them, presently the greedinesse of their natures falls into such excesse, that nothing but Ryot and Drunkennes is made the Steward of their expences.

This only is to be cured by this worthy Officer, for his fit distribution makes the one moderate, and his skilfull preservation makes the other discreete. And indeede to speake the truth, a wise and indicious Vittual.

Master which knowes by Powdering, Turning, Cleansing and Drying, how
to keepe his victualls sound and sweete, from Moulding, Sowering, Rosting or Stinking, is the Souldiers best Phisition, and gives him nothing
but what brings health to his body, pleasure to his tast, and contentment
to his minde.

This Officer must be both for himselfe and others, a skilfull and cunning Auditor, keeping his Bookes and Reckonings faithfully and inftly both betweene himselfe and the Treasurer for generall and great receits, betweene all such as shall bring in prouisions, and his vnder victu allers, but aboue all betweene his owne conscience and the Souldiers wants, whom (vinder fo many Colours) he may wring; that vnleffe his owne foule speake vnto him, there is no other Argus that can spie out his mischieues: Therefore for the preuention of all wrongs, and that no cunning may walke in Truths vppermoft Garment; there is strictly required arthis Officers hands a folemne and religious Oath, by which heeis bound to serue Justly, vprightly, and truely in his place, having alwaies his Bookes of account in a readines, that when sever he shall bee called vpon, either by the Generall or Treasurer, hee may with all diligence make knowne the vitermost depth of his actions, and declare his faithfulnesse and integritie both to his Prince, his Country and the Armie in which he serueth : neither shall he be more carefull of himselfe then of his Clerkes and Inferior ministers; prouiding that they as himfelfe doe Iustly in all things, and that Imarie and Extertion lye not Bed rid orficke

in his Office: which if he performe as he ought, then is he a noble and renowned Officer, and howfoeuer his mortall part dye, yet shall the memory of his Immortall Goodnes survive as long as any Souldier holds his remembrance.

TO



## TOTHERIGHT HONORABLE DVD LEY LORD NORTH

his very good Lord toda on the contract

## pluodi sed a secretari priveri de sebrele ristario vibroni ton, si sed ristario vibro di se di s

## sitio pulsario Of the Pronost-Marshall.



Bring to you (my deare Lord) in the tribute of this fhort Epiftle, two great Homages which lowe, the one to the memory of your noble Grandfather (to whose honourable fauours I was infinitly bound in my Scruice to the late Queene Elizabeth of bleffed memory) and the other to your worthy felfe (from whom I have ever received that respect, which not to acknowledge, would hang as a Sereine or rotting

Mildew vpon any thankfull nature) be pleased then to heare it speake at your best leasure, and though it have never so rude an veterance, yet you shall find it beares a worthy affection both to your Name and Honor.

The Office vpon which I touch in this place (my best Lord) is that of the Prouost-Marshall, which howsoever the Generall (through his greatnes and priority of place) hath power to confirme and appoint, yet commonly the Gentleman which is defigned therunto, is alwaies nominated and recommended by the Lord Marshall of the field, being his vnder Officer, and one vnto whom is deliuered the charge and keeping of all Delinquents and criminall offenders what soeuer.

This Office I have seene in mine experience to carry a double and twofold estimation (yet rather out of corruption then true ground) men iudging of the good or euill thereof according to the worthinesse or vnworthinesse of the partie which held it, the honest, wife, & vnderstanding man swaying it with Reputation and Renowne. The foolish, base, and contemptible person ordering it with a regard of as much or more Imputation: But all this is fault in Election, not in Place; for it is certaine, the Office in it selfe is both worthy, necessary and good, a calling fit for a Gentleman of Blood and qualitie, and a degree wherein a man may

may expresse any vertue to the life, both with applause and admiration. It is also of great profit and advancement (which inferres Merit) and there is knit vnto it a fingular Trust, which must ever allow of much Faith and Wildome: I cannot compare it in our civill government to any office neerer then that of our Vnder-Sherifes, which howfocuer the prouerbe is, Twife an Vnder-Sherife, euer a Knaue : yet it is but corruption that makes good the Adage; for I know many honest menthat many yeares have had the place, yet many times better then a world of those which contemne it. But to proceed, the Gentleman which should be elected to this place of Prouest-Marshall, would bee a man of great Judgement and Experience in all Martiall Discipline, well seene in the lawes and ordinances of the Campe, and fuch a one as knew well the vse, benefit and necesfitie of all things belonging either vnto Food or Raiment, he should bee a louer of Instice, impartiall in his dealings, and free from the transportation of Passions: he should have an eare that contemptuously could beat backe, not furiously drinke in Slander and rayling language: hee should haue an eye that could gaze on all objects without winking, and an heart full of discreet compassion, but not toucht with foolish or melting pitie. In briefe, he ought to be only the Lawes servant, and indeed to challenge no more in himselfe, then so much as exprest to her his obedience.

For the nature of his Office, hee is fust the great and principall Gaoler of the Armie, having power to detaine and keepe prisoner whosever shalbe committed vnto him by lawfull authoritie; and though some contemptuously have cal'd him the Hangman, or executioner of the Army, yet it is not so, but as our Sheriffes of Counties are bound to find slaves for fuch needfull vses: so he by his place is obliged to find men and other implements for all such occasions, and to that end hath allowance for many attendants of all forts and conditions, and many Substitutes, which are called Vnder-Prouofts, who have likewife allowance of attendants to dispatch any execution how suddenly soeuer commanded, and to that end it is not lawfull for the Vnder-Pronosts to goe at any time without Halters, Withs, or strangling cords of Match, euer about them. The Pronost-Marshall hath the charge of all manner of tortures, as Gynes, Shackels, Bolts, Chaines, Bilbowes, Manacles, Whips, and the like, and may by his Ministers vse them, either in case of Judgement or Commandement from a Marshall Court, or otherwise vpon vnrulinesse at his owne discretion: hee is by his officers to see all places of Execution prepared and furnished with Engins fitting to the Judgement, whether it bee Gallowes, Gybbets, Scaffolds, Pillories, Stocks or Strappadoes, or any other Engine which is fet vp for terrour and affright to fuch as behold it.

This Officer hath the guard and keeping of all such Prisoners as are taken in the warres, till they be either ransomed, exchanged, or by the General otherwise disposed; in this case the nobler his viage is, the greater will the praise be of his humanitie & vertue. If any Drums or Trumpets shall happen to come from the enemy, they are by the Provest may hall to be entertained, accommodated and provided, vnlesse it shall please the

Lord

Lord Marshall himselfe otherwise to dispose of them. And that all these duties before said may with more efficacie and lustre be performed, hee shall have his Quarter in the strongest and most securest part of all the Armic; and in all Marches he is also to have the place of greatest safetic, for the assurance of his Prisoners.

Moreouer, it is the Office of the Pronost-Marsball, by authoritie of the Lord Marsball, to guard with a good Conuoy of men, both to the camp, in the camp, and from the camp, all maner of Victualers, Vianders, Marchants and others which bring any prouisions to the campe, and associated as they are entred, he shall rate and set prize (in a reasonable & indifferent maner) upon all their goods, and secures them from the insolence of the Soldier, prouiding that no man take any thing from them without payment: hee also looks to the proportions of true Weights and Measures, and reconciles any difference in buying and selling, for which labour he hath of the Providadors or Marchants, the Hides and Tongues of all manner of cattell that are kill'd, and every weeke sixpence a piece in money numbered for their stalles, which sixpence a weeke he is accountable for vnto the Lord Marsball, for to him that see is belonging.

It is likewise the Office of the Pronost-Marshall, to see that the Marketplace of the Campe bee once in two dayes swept and kept sweet and cleane, that all garbage and filthinesse bee burnt and consumed, that no man doe the office of nature but in places convenient, and that in the whole Campe or Garrison there may not be any thing which may turne

to a generall annoyance.

The Provost-Marshall must have an especiall care to the keeping of the peace, and to apprehend the least occasion which may tend to the breach of the same, hee must preuent all Mutinies, Quarrels, and disorders, and that no fuch vnciuill diffention may have strength to out-face or withstand the power of his command : hee shall ever have attending about him a guard of his vnder Pronosts and servants, who with short trunches ons in their hands, according vnto Military forme, shall enforce obedience to any lawfull commandement which proceedeth from him, and having taken them in their actuall transgressions, to commit them to Prifon, or the Bolts, as the nature or cuill example of the crime deserueth; for it is a dutie expected at this Officers hands, to be a ready suppressor of all vice and disorder, and to bee a maintenance and advauncer of all those which have any semblance or likenesse with an honest, sober and civill inclination; whence it behooueth him to have a ready and quick judging eye between the good and bad, so that he may in an early houre restraine all immoderat and vnlawfull Gaine, and rather compell the Cut-throat to kill himselfe with enuy, then to consume others with the rust and canker of his vnsatisfied Couetousnesse. It is also a maine point in this Officers dutie, to discouer the lurking subtilties of treacherous Spies, and by learning the true interpretation of mens Words, lookes, manners, formes, and habits of apparell, to bee able to turne the infide of their hearts out-ward, and to pull out that little deuill of malicious deceit, though he lye hid in neuer so darke a corner; and truly a better service cannot be done. not is there any Art sooner learned if a man will apply his knowledge

but feriously thereunto.

To conclude the last dutie of the Prouost-Mashall, is (after the Watch is fet at night) to furuey the Army, and fee if it remaine calme and still and that no diforderly noyles or tumults keepe any part of it awake and not filent; and in this furney if he encounter with any immoderat fires, or superfluous candle-lights, he shall cause them to be put out and extinguished; or if he heare in Sutlers cabins or other harbors any Drunkards, Tobacco takers, or other varuly persons, whose noise is both offensive to the Campe, and giueth to others an euil! example, he shall presently fup. preffe them, and make them depart, or else vpon groffer diforder, commit them : for besides the vndecency and vnfitnesse of the action, such clamors and noises are more then hurtfull in a Campe, epecially being any thing neere where the Sentinell standeth: for it is an interruption and hindrance through which he cannot possibly discharge his dutie.

Thus I have briefly runne over all the maine points in which the duty of this Officer doth confift, and though not with those amplifications and inlargements, which might be required in a greater and more spacious Volume (to which no law in this Art of writing will allow me) yet I know(like a reasonable handsome picture) your Lordship may (if you

please) iudge by it of euery feature in the lining proportion, which if nobly you vouchfafe to doe, you pay mee the greatest Interest my loue can wish, and I will studie more and more to bee your feruant. Salbred piges of bis,

of the fune, been the predent II Morting, Oping Is and afforders bet the side first vacinity aid action hay here forenests to construct or with-Ment the power of this continued about the latter made attenues and and man stein d of his under Page and the mars, who with those intendice

on the good so I bed spelar it was in an easy, of ore the inc oderat a la vulava full Game, and rather competences, and trailer the wind structure to continue of both will style spite of

व्यवस्थान है के विद्वित्त है है कि विद्वित है कि विद्वार के स्टबर के कार्य के कार्य है कि वर्ष thing the ring interpretation of the remains on a second point

and the soft appeared, to be not entered the intide of a new Learners.

med distribution and the state of the proceeding from

nce und aniordick. I del to bee a mainten lace and a fuge coar watch have any fe obligate or liferally with an house. Noor some for any lease of behopped him place are dy local, and

the light the light of the light of the section of Do Inc Belle, as rindnata con unifer in the of suddenis expedication is offices had another than the



### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE. GEORGE BRIDGES LORD CHANDOIS.

THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Judge-Marshall.



Ou are (my noble and worthy Lord) happie in your owne growing fruitfulnesse to all goodnesse, happy in your delcent from your Parents noble vertues, and happy in the hopes of all that doe or shall depend vpon you, whence I make bold to fend you this poore Epistle as an acknowledgment of my fernice, not to plead merit, but to fignifie my wishes to the prosperitie of your Spring and flou-

rishing beginning. If you please to reade it you shall finde nothing in it that is vncomely, it you neglect it, yet is it the figure of fuch an affection as wisht it for your service; how ever I know your goodnes, and dare boldly knocke thereat, for I know it is a Gate that must not be shut

against any honest or worthy endcauour.

The Subject whereof I intend to intreate in this Epiftle, is of the Indge-Marshall, or as some call him (by the old Roman name) the Prater, or Iudge in all Martiall causes. This is a renowned and reuerend Officer (as some suppose) attendant; but as I confidently imagine rather an assistant to the Lord Marshall, for he is not alwaies designed, nominated, and appointed by the Generallor Lord Marshall, but oftner by the King himselfe and his Regall authoritie, which greatnesse in election proues the dignitie and worthines of his place, for it is a rule in all the Titles of Honor whatfoeuer, that as that is the greatest, which rileth immediatly from God and not from the King, fo thole are the next belt which rife immediately from the King; and not by a fecond from the Kings Commission: but letting passe the curiossity in his appointment, let it suffice vs that his place is of great Reverence and respect, and the man which ought to be elected thereunto, should be a person of sincere and holy life, Learned, Religious, and of a found and approved knowledge in matters

matters of Iustice and Equitie, he should have a conscience like an Innocent and spotlesse Virgin, delicate, quicke and tender, yet fit to receive no impression or stampe but that of goodnes, for he hath to doe with the bloods and lives of men, and no addulterate censure committed against them, but pulles with incessant cries vengeance from heaven to confume the Author; I have knowne (in mine owne experience) called to to this place both reuerend and famous Dinines, and sometimes learned and worthy Civilians, either of which have discharged the place withall contentment and admiration, mannaging all their actions, both with a Religious feare of Gods Indgements, and a carefull duty to the preferuation of Iustice; but yet if a man had libertie to wish in this place the fulnesse of perfection, me thinkes a man that had the mixture of both these excellent qualities were sure of the best composition, and would farre exceede the fingle Ingredian; that is to fay, either Dinine Cinilian, or a Cinill-Dinine would farre surpasse a simple Dinine or simple Cinilian.

It cannot be denied but in as much as the Civill Law hath the greatest sway in all marshall crimes & controversies, therefore it is necessary the Iudge of these errors should be learned in that profession; so on theother side, since there is no constant path but it may walke whither soeuer the Conscience please to giude it, there is a strong necessary that Religion and Divine knowledge come in for an assistance, least by a small mistake the stated Conscience may goe awry, and then there is no fall but in-

toa Precipice.

Divers I confesse have written Military and Marshall lawes, and of all thole not any with a more worthy or memorable approbation then our Reuerend and learned Doctor Sutolife, (whom I long knew in the wars and much reuerenced for his infinite vertues) being a man fo able and vacontrolable through the merit of his owne rare experience that few comes neare, none equals him : yet he I know will modeftly confesse that those lawes cannot alwaies be certaine in all places; for Generalls themfelues continually taking vpon them to make new lawes apteft and fittelt for the present Times, find sometimes those things which were imagined most fir, at other times to bee held the most inconvenient, and what was at one time most dangerous, at another time is most sufferable and wholesome; so that still there must be a Quere left (as our Common Lawyers rearme it) and there is no constant Law (but the Iudges Conscience) for all manner of occasions, maine Trespasses only excepted, as Treasons, Conspiracies, Contempt of Officers, Cowardise, Theft, and the like : all which by fetled rules are euermore moft feucately punnished: lo that to a well mixed Law to have a Judge of a better mixed temper, is the best election that can bee found out by any noble and well tried Iudgement.

Times in the Warres makes the nature of Offences differ, for I have feene a man who for stealing of a Hat or such a trifle, nay for going but out of his Quarter or breaking his array, hath beene kild or hang'd

vp Imediately, when at another time great fellonics have beene committed but yet escaped, horrible offences pardoned, and grosse Injuries highly praised; this hath beene the working of Times and the Conscience of the Judge, neither will I stand in this place to argue either the

one or the others greater goodneffe. und all o no mile la se

The Prater or Indge-Marfall being thus chosen, his place and Office is the same almost in effect and qualitie which they carry in our ciuill Citries and Townes, whom we call by the names of Recarders, for as those are the Mouthes, Indgements and Censures of the Supreame Magis frate which we call Major, Baily or Alderman, condemning or acquirting all fuch as are brought before them for any criminall offence, of what nature or condition focuer, because it is supposed the higher Magistrare is not learned in the Misterie and Science of the Lawes : So is this Preter or Indge-Marshall the voice, Censure and opinion of the Lord Marshallof the Armie, having full power and authority to drawe vp, Ingroffe and pronounce all Sentences and Processes drawne & agreed vpon in a Marshall Court against any Delinguent or Capitall offender whatfoeuer; and for that cause he hath his seate and place in all Marshall Courts next vader the Lord-marshall, where he sitteth and heareth all complaints, euidences and proofes which are brought in against any criminall offendor; taking ample notes thereof and reducing them into heads both for his owne and all the other Captaines helpes which are Judges in the fame Court; which being heard at large and vpon folemne oath; he then calleth in the offender and against him layeth all the Inferences, Accusations, and Imputations which had formerly beene alleadged, together with the proofes and affertions, receiving the Delinquents ample and full answer to the same, with all those testimonies and excuses which he can produce: which done and the offending partie withdrawne, the Prator discourseth to all the Court his opinion of all he hath heard, what agreeth with the lawes, and what standeth against them, discussing all doubtfull questions, and truely and sincearely declaring how far the nature of the Offence extendeth; of which, when his speach is ended he craueth their Iudgement.

Then the puny Captaine first, and so successively all the rest one after another give their opinions of the nature of the offence, and what punnishment it deserueth; then in conclusion the Lord marshall himselfe (if the be present) giveth the sinall sentence; which sinished, the Prator causeth the sentence to be drawne, which being read by him to the whole Table, (to that effect which the Lord-marshall pronounced) immediately the Prisoner is called for againe, vnto whome after the Prator in a solemne and learned Oration hath ript up the qualitie and pernitiousness of his sinne and the excellencie of the Lawes in cutting off the crueltie of such sinness, and then sawdering up the wounds of a torne and delacerat Conscience with divine and wholesome counsell, forthwith he shall reade unto him the full tenor of his sentence, in such fort as it is there written; and then deliver it into the hands of the Provost-mar-

shall to fee it put in execution. And in this manner hee shall deale with all other controversies whatfoeuer; observing still to keepe in a faire and large Booke, handfomely ingrost vp, all Complaints, Proceedings, and Sentences whatfocuer which shall passe before him, as well for his owner discharge, as the honor of the Court, and satisfaction of all such as shall haue occasion vpon any controuersie or question to search or ouer-looke the fame.

And this is the greatest part and effect of the Indge-Marshalls Office in our Courts of warre, though in other Countries they have further imployments; as the answering of forreigne Messengers, the drawing of Proclamations, controule of victuallers and the like; yet fince for thefe we have other perticular and distinct Officers, I will impose no more vp. on this then his due place challengeth, but only conclude thus. That if

hee discharge his place rightly in manner and forme as it is discribed, he shall questionlesse doe to himselfe a great honor, and performe a most acceptable worke both flored or to God, the world, and all good Christians. Las tall tol bus , valoritans

and Course here wifer he Loud said wherehe in el

an all complaints, cuidences and thoule wirels are brought in

ay criminall offender taking stations thereof and and edecing the molded both or is owne and all its other Cartaine below to none that the in the land to the bright which which are I that and open contained the three calleth in the offender and against him layers provided to provide both of down and the both both bearing the both of the bot

committed and for and for the head with all thought of amonies

was dies the altitle built and there and price and in the said

personal properties of the nature of the office

where the first state of the first states of the first of

was a state of the same of the bank of the bank of

of the feet mid to be easiers while a leaner send of the minutes in

learned O railed habition pelico

one be Chally cade yours that the Collection is lend once in their over in their over in the bore withcon; and then deliceriting the hands of he Press, as a

were the transfer of the child will be the same that the companies of the child the ch

solidate in several series and the care series for the Lowes in restitut nucleic offisch finnes, and then fandeung sp the wounds of may exerte Configence with their total coloring coeff

were which be care the fuct which dence not the delending parties ashipstone the Privory Romania of the Court his opinion of all Deline at a last what have a pour less they deline and the best of the section of

the view of the first state of the constraint of

All Dum Da mid no mid veneral



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE, HEN-RY CARIE LORD HVNS-

DON, now Viscount ROCHFORD.

Of the Scout-Master.

Hough I am (my Lord) a stranger to your person, yet in as much as you are descended from the blood of the Ancient, Great, and Noble Somerset, to that I may draw neere for shelter, It hath many times shadowed our House; and though the Frosts of Time and Fortune bite neuer so cruelly, yet will not all the leaucs (I hope) shed. Be then pleased (Sir) that I may solicite you to read this Epistle, the tale

is plaine (for it comes from a Souldier) It is true (for I have Experience to beare me witnes) and that it is modelt, feare not (for a Gentleman sent it.)

Concerning this Office of the Scout-master, or Captaine of the Vantcurrers, there have been many variable disputations touching his dependancie, noris the reconcilement settled or made perfect in all mens opinions, some fixing him vpon the Lord Marshall, some on the Generall of the Horse, and some on the Lieutenant Generall of the Horse, and indeed some on none, but as a publike Officer of great and eminent importance to subfist onely of himselfe. True it is that the last opinion is most strong, if we draw into consideration the varietie and change of his duties, for they are so many and so divers, that indeed he cannot be fayd to depend of any one, but of all, and may be truely called The Campes generall Seruant: yet if we come to particulars, and put those many duties into seuerall Balances, we shall find that the weightiest of all belongs to the Lord Marshall. It is certaine he is beholden to the superiour Officers of the Horse for his Guard, so are they likewise to him for his Discougries; but the most important matters and secrets of his knowledge, that is the

Touching the election of this Officer, he ought to be a man of infinit great Valour and Iudgement, very skilfull in the knowledge of the Countrey wherein he serueth, a good Cosmographer, and describer of the situations of places, and such a one as by his eye can suddenly frame vnto himselfe a Map of whatsoever he discovereth. Two things he must especially beware of, Reshwesse and Credulitie: for the first with many dangers will continually make spoyle of his labours, the other with too light trust will make him liable to vntruths, which is an everlasting im-

putation.

The two principall parts of his Office confift, the one in Discouering. the other in Guarding : his dutie in Discovering, is for the most part exercifed when the Armie marcheth, at which time he is to receive from the Lieutenant Generall of the Horse (or some other by his appointment) 2 competent Guard or troupe of Horsemen, being for the most part all Light-horsemen or Dragoones, and with these the Scout-master shall ride before the Armie, and scowre all the wayes and passages through which it shall march, and this he shall doe with all filence and swiftnesse, taking Hill into his confideration the nature, eafe, and dangers of all Paffages Rivers, and Bridges: he shall gage and sound the depths of all Foards, try their bredths, and how many may march ouer in breast, see whether the Shallow goe over straight, and in a direct line or crooked, and whether the Channell be hard, muddie, or opprest with great stones, blocks, bushes or the like, he shall likewise observe all Hils, Valleys, Straits, Woods, Bogs, and all aduantages or disaduantages whatsoeuer: For howsoeuer it may be prefumed that the Generall, either by his friends, by the imployment of Spies, by Traytors or some other aduisoes, nay by his own knowledge may have fome Notion or affurance of his passages, yet in respect of the present mutabilitie of times, and the stratagems of the enemy (which can neuer be idle in these busic affayres:) this Officer can in no wise bee wanting; for by common experience we fee, what was yesterday; nay, within this houre passable, may at this instant be possessed by the enemy, or by his deuises impeached: Foards are soone choakt vp with Caltbropes, Bridges are soone broken, conceal'd Ditches easily caft, Pitfals & Mines in strait wayes quickly dig'd, and an infinit world of other impediments to hinder an Armie; all which it is the Office of this Scout-master to discouer: yet with such care and circumspection, that still hee be sure to prouide for himselfe and his company a good and a safe Retrait, for howsoeuer (in places of danger) he be not bound to ingage himselfe to farre, that the enemy might cut betweene him and the Army, yet is hee not vpon a small apprehension to cut his course so short, as thereby the Armie might be toucht with the least hazard. It is his part therefore to mount vp to the highest ground of aduantage, and where he may view the greatest Hemisphere or Horyzon that is about him, and thence looke and observe the Countrey every way, and if any difficultie of places be in his eye to discouer, hee shall send foorth certaine Vant-curriers before him

him, being men of knowledge, valor & iudgment, who shall make plaine what soeuer to his eye remaineth doubtfull; and if in this service their valours shall transport them further then his directions, and so they become engaged (which is a fault of an vnexcusable nature) yet shall he second them, and bring them off, if there be any possibilitie in the hazard. Nor shall he thus alone cleare the way which is directly before, but also hee shall send foorth his Vanteurriers on every side, and cleare the way round about him, & what impediments soever he shall encounter withall; if out of his owne power he cannot relieve them, he shall immediatly retire, and informe the Lord-marshall, and from him receive either assistance, or some new directions.

When the Quarter-master shall attend the Lord marshall about the A-lodgement and Quartering of the Armie, it is then the Office of the Scout-master to attend him also, and with his best Iudgement and know-ledge to take a serious and iudiciall survey of the ground, and from the situation therof to observe all advantages and disadvantages which may be either with, or against them, and with a modest freedome to deliver

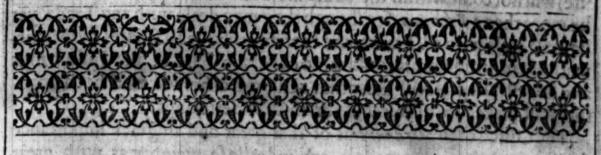
his opinion, and the reasons thereof vnto the Lord marshall.

Againe, when the Marshals Trumpet shall set the Watch, instantly the Scout-mafter shal have his Guard of Horsmen assigned vnto him either by the Generall or the Lieutenant-Generall of the Horse. If there be not (as in most disciplines there are) a certaine course or rule who continually shall guard him; and these being mounted, he leadeth without the camp, who watch and guard the same all that night, and are indeed truly those whom we call Sentinels Perdues; for there he placeth them in their feuerall places Sentinell-wife round about the Campe, giving them strickt charge vpon paine of death not to stirre vntill they bee relieued. As for the Marshalling of them, it is according to his owne judgement, or neere, or farre off, as time and the dangers require: for if the Campe be small, and the number great, then hee placeth them thicker, and relieueth oftner; but if the Campe be wide, and the number small, then they are thinner, and their duties longer. When the Watch is relieved, the Scoutmafter relieueth his Sentinels and Scouts, and the Campe not remouing he continueth his Ward for the day also, but in no wise after the same manner as hee did his Watch, but according to his discretion and iudgement hee shall alter his ground and place of Scouting: for hee ought to vnderstand that all his endeauors are to discouer the enemy, but yet to keepe himselfe close and concealed, and therefore (as neere as he can) in watching he shall sceke to plant his Scouts in valleys and defcending grounds, where their eyes may take the best prospect betweene the light and the earth; but in the day time he shall make his Guard vpon the hils, whence his eyes may fetch the largest distance: In the seasons which are tempestuous and bitter, then he ought to relieue often, but if calme and gentle, he may suit his troubles according. Assoone as the Army riseth, it is his place to passe on before to the purposes already re-hearsed; and if he make no speedy returne back againe, it argues a cleare coaft. 02

de les de les carles de l'opposit de la competit de

my eller a taken place to puller

116



# TO THE RIGHT . HONOR ABLE, OLIVER, LORD

SAINT-IOHN OF BLETSOE.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Liuetenant of the Ordnance.



Ethat shall shippe himselfe (my Lord) vpon so great a discouery as (in this worke) I have vndertaken, and stands bound to satisfie so many noble persons as I have made mine Adventures, must (though hee borrow much from Knowledge) yet begge a great deale more from Hope; and as he passes some great Seas with Assurance, so hee must passe others by Chaunce; In the latter whereof, though he be ever

accompaned with feare and doubt, yet being happily patt and finding some end of his purpose. It, he makes a Iewell to crowne his voyage; your Lordship is an Ocean and I must aduenture to saile vpon your patience with this Epistle: If I passe cleere, as I doubt not (for fame reports you learned) you shall make me much happier then I am by your knowledge, and your selfea little richer by one poore mans affection.

This Office and Officer (of whose nature I am to discourse to your Lordship) we call the Livetenant of the Ordnance or vnder Captaine of the Artillery, and is indeede no lesse then the Substitute, or immediate next in command and authority to the Master of the Ordnance or Great Captaine of the Artillerie: a man which for his elsection ought to have many singular good parts, as Learning, Wisdome, Valour, Temperance and all the spacious degrees of an honest and worthy frugalitie. He ought to be a Souldier from his Cradle, for he can have no experience to old, nor indeed is there any experience either young or old which (once in his life)

life) will not come within the compasse of his necessity; he had neede be more then a Freeman, for though they may deale with any Trade, yet he must deale with all Trades, and therefore about all studies the Mathematicks are fittest for his reading; to conclude, if he be but Industrious and honest, the one will show him skill, the other vse, and both toge-

ther will make him a subject fit for these vndertakings.

The Office of the Ordnance is of that great and finguler importance that few in the armie exceede it, and indeede fo weighty as with great difficulty any one man is able to passe through and fully to discharge it: whence it comes that there are allowed vnto him many assistants, especially one about the rest; who being next to himselfe, we call by the name of his Liuetenant, and in truth what soeuer may belong to the care of the Master, all that is ever within the compasse of his authority also; for not only in his absence doth he carry the generall care of all proceedings within that perticular affaire, but also in his presence hath a particuler reference to the ordering of many duties which as burthens too grofe and heavie, are removed from the Master to the Livetenants shoulders: and thereforeit is requifite that wherefoeuer the Mafter of the Ordnance is absent, there the Linetenant be euer present, as if the Master be in the Campe, then must the Livetenant bee at the Breach or Curtaine, if thee Master bee at the Breach, then the Linetenant at the Storehouse, the mine or some other place of necessarie Imploiment, and indeed the Offices doe so necessarily depend one vpon another, that the perfection of this mans duty can hardly bee deferned, till with the other (which is the greater) it bee arteficially compared, and therefore in the Office of the Master of the Ordnance, this Office of the Linetenant shall be made more plaine and easie. But to proceede, this Officer hath under him many Inferior Officers, as Master-Gunners, Canoniers, Waggon-master, the Furrier and diverse Clerkes, besides Gun-makers, and Carriage makers, and others of meaner dependance; so that he is as a middle man betweene the Master of the Ordnance and his Inferior Officers, giving an account to one, and taking account from others, and by reason of his more generall comercement with those men (who have their only dependance on him, and finde all their necessities relieued by him)he hatha more liberall and free power both to heare from them, and see in them many negligences and escapes which the Master can in no wisebehold, and which, it is his duty and place to see reformed, either by his owne power, or by complaint to the Mafter, who is not to dilpute or crave Testimonic in any thing which the Linetenant shall declare vnto him.

It is the Office of this Linetenant to see that both the Master Gunner and all his vnder Gunners doe their duties in observing and mannageing their Peeces, in mounting, dismounting, in their diligence in charging and discharging; lading, leveling and whatsoever else belongs to their art and cunning, and to the end that his eie may bee of more force, both in the sinding out and mending of all errors which shall

he himselfe be skilfull and expert in the same knowledge; to as vpon euery error or fault discerned, he may bee able not only to correct and controule, but also to instruct and teach the Ignorant how and in what manner to amend any escape in what fort socuer committed.

It is his especiall duty to see that his Store-house or place of charge be continually furnished withall manner of provisions both for Amilei rie, Munision and all forts of Armes, both offensive and defensive as Ordnance ready mounted with all their cooplements, Ornaments, Tires, and necessaries which belong vnto the same, as Cannons for Batteries from the least to the greatell fize; as from fixe to tenne inches in board or height, and carrying bullet from forty foure to scauenty pound weight; demie-Cannons which carry bullet from twenty foure to thirtie pound weight; Culluerins from fixteene to twenty pound, Demies Cullucrines, Faulcones, Faulconers and Sakers; Quintalls of Cannon powder and other powder, and Oxe hides to couer and defend the fames Shot of Iron, Leade, and stone in great quantitie and for all manner of Peeces, Match in great abundance, Iron shouells, Mattocks, Pickaxes, Axes, Harchets, Hookes, Planks, Boards, Maunds, Baskets, Nailes for Tyers, and all other purposes, Sawes Sledges, Iron bacres, Crowes, Augers, Engines for all purpoles? Chargers, Ladles, Rammers, Spunges, Chaines, Cart-clours, Weights, all forts of Smiths tooles, Horfe-livoos and Nailes, Cordage, Coffers, Candles, Lanthorns, Ceare cloathes, Soape, Tarre, soft Grease, Scalling-ladders, beside a world of other things which are needlesse to refite and yet depend on the Ordnance; He shall have also in store all manner of small short as Musquets, Dragoones, Pistolls and the like; with all manner of Implements belonging vnto them either for Horse or Foote; also all forts of Launces, Pikes, Murrions, Corflets, Swords, Daggers, Girdles, Hangers, Bandeleers, Bulletbagges, Flaskes and Touch-boxes for Horsemen, Carbines or Petronells, and indeede generally all manner of Armes whatfoeuer; for it were an infinite thing in this short Epistle to reckon vp all which appertaines to this great Office: Now as this Store house is to bee furnished with all these severall provisions, so likewise it is to be accommodated with men of all the senerall Trades belonging to such provisions as Mine-masters, Smiths, Founders, Coopers, Carpenters, Wheele-wrights and the like; all which as they are under the Guard of the Liuetenant of the Ordnance, fo it is his Office to fee them prouided of all maner of necessaries belong ing to their Trades, which by vertue of his warrants or potents hee shall raise from any man that is owner thereof (being a friend) at such Rates and Prizes as by the Master of the Ordnance shall be appointed, and also he shall call vpon the pay-Master of the Artillery (if any defect shall bee in that behalfe) for the true payment of all wages to all these or any other which are vnder his commandment, and if the detect bee in the Treasurer, he shall then enforme the Master of the Ordnance and from himreceiue order for the redresse of the same, and then hee shall also oucrfee

uerfee that the Clerke of the Ordnancedoe truely and faithfully keepe an account both of the paies and all other charges belonging to the Office by Libranas, or Tickets fent either from the Master of the Ordnance himselfe, or elsefrom his Linetenant; and lastly he shall see that the Pur wier generall (which fome call the Committie of the Ordnance) doe make al his provisions (whether it be of Bastiments or other necessaries depending either vpon the Office, or the people appeteining vnto the Office) in a good and fufficient manner, without either Crueltie or remifneffe neither offending the Friend from whom he raileth these profits by any vniust and vnlawfull exactions, nor yet wronging the place by want of fuch necessary commodities, either through his flacknes in dury, Bribe-

ry or any other fost-hearted or pratiall forbearance.

To conclude this Epistle (because I shall have ocasion to amplificita great deale more in the office of the Mafter of the Ordnance) it is the Office of the Linetenant of the Ordnance to deliver vnto every Captaine or his Officer whom he shall appoint for that purpose (vpon Just and approved defects, or vpon warrant from the Mafter of the Ordnance; all manner of supplies of Armes and Munition whatsocher, whether belonging to the Pike, Musquet or any other weapon whatsoever as also Powder, Match, Bullet or Lead, (according to the nature of his prouifions) and the same so delivered shal defalke out of the Captaines Count, & reckoning by the returne of his certificate into the hands of the Treafurer, vnder Treasurer or their deputies. Many other things depend vp. on this Office, but these are the most materiall, and from them (by an easie exposition) may be reduced all the rest, so that I may very well cast Anchor here and rest till by the course of Time and my purpose in these proceedings I be inforced to faile into a much

The end of the third Decad.

all washing to be suggested by the

A Charles and the second of th

larger Ocean.



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE LORD THEOPHILVS HOWARD

of WALDEN, Heire apparant to the Earledome of Suffolke.

## THE ARGUMENT. Of the Muster-Master in Warre.

Know (my Lord) that to expresse you as you are in the true dignitie of your place, were to set you farre before the first in this great Range: for as you are the Sonne of an Earle, so you stand upon an higher Scale, and by the curtesse of our Land, moue where you may behold these moue below you. But when I consider how I have formerly made bold with a noble Peere of your owne Ranke (I meane

Earles sonnes, and so walke before in Curtesie, so you are Barons, and by that true right sit in the V pper House of Parliament (which other Earles sonnes cannot doe) I could not but conceiue that this smaller lampe gaue the clearer light, and that by placing you in this Range, I darkened not, but did much rather adde to your splendor, by shewing that as you may march amongst the sonnes of Earles, in case of Triumph, so you may sit amongst the Peeres of the land in matter of Iustice. It is farre from me to dreame of any abatement in your Greatnesse; for so farre haue I been bound to the noble goodnesse of your thrise worthy Father, that I must protest from the plaine truth of an unspotted affection, if I were able to adde or bring one sparke of glory to the Altar of your great Name, I would doe it with all fulnesse, all swiftnesse, though the malice of the whole world as a greedy torrent lay ready to overwhelme me.

But to proceed to the discourse at which mine occasion now pointeth; It is the Office of the Atuster-master, of which there are two kinds, the one in Warre, the other in Peace; and howsoeuer they agree in name, yet in nature they haue little coherence: but since it is of the first (as namely the Muster-master in Warre) vpon whom now I must discourse:

R I will

I will omit all circumstance and disputation, and plainly fal to the discus-

fing of his Office.

First, touching the nature of the person himselfe, it is certaine, that (for the most part) Muster-masters in the warres are very odious vnto Captaines; for in seruing of his Prince truly, and in mustering stricktly he wipeth much vadue profit from the Captaine, and spoyleth him of those payes, which it may be he had hop'd should have relieved many of his necessities : on the other side, if the Muster-master doe conniue & blance at faults either for affection, or profit, then must he necessarily be an euill servant to the State, and the end of all his worke can be nothing but difgrace and reprehension : so that I conclude, it is the honest Muster-master and the honest Captaine which must agree and live in a wholesome concord together; the Captaine being carefull (as neere as in him lies) to keepe his Company strong and according to covenant; and the Mustermaster abiding a considerat man, free from corruption, neither standing too punctually on small trifles, nor yet so wilfully blind as not to see errors that are groffe and palpable; let vprightnes therefore be done on all sides (for to discourse of Iniuries might instruct or open a way vnto Iniury) so shall the Prince be well serued, the Captaine better payed, and the Muster-master best of all reputed.

Touching the election of a Muster-master for the warres, he would be a man of good reckning and account, a man honest, discreet, vpright, and one that feareth God: he should be an able man both in Person, Knowledge, and Substance, and indeed ought to see all equitie and Justice performed between the Prince, the Captaine, and the Souldier; he ought to haue the two best parts of a Gentleman, Valour, and Temperance, for howfoeuer there have bin a falle position held a amongst Souldiers, that Muster-masters must be Pen-men, and not men of the Sword, yet there is errour in the conceit, for I have in mine owne experience knowne Captaines and Muster-masters equally to exchange and alter their conditions, Muster-masters becomming Captaines, and Captaines Muster-masters, and indeed not without great reason; for beleeue it, this place cuer deserueth a full Captaines experience. Againe, whereas in the old & lesse orderly times it was not lawfull for the Muster-master to take Musters without the presence of the Treasurer, the rude Soldier taking vpon him an ill libertie to bend his Pike vpon him vnlesse hee came vnder that protection; yet it is now otherwise, and the Muster-master may take his view or musters of the Souldiers when he please, where he please, and in what maner he please, prouided it be done with an honest vprightnes, without any enuious crueltie against the Captaine, or by withdrawing from the Souldier his full meanes and due reckoning.

As concerning the principall parts of his office and dutie, they consist chiefly in the taking of Musters, that is to say, in the taking of a full and perfect view of all the seuerall Souldiers of every Band and Troupe, as well the officers from the first to the lowest, as the others which are inferiour, collecting into a Booke the names and surnames of every per-

fon.

fon, their ages, haires, complexions, and other especiall markes as also their Armes and Weapons of euerie seuerall kinde a their Horses, Furnitures, and other especiall markes to their belonging, with whatfoeuer elfe may availe and helpe his knowledge heereafter when hee shall have a cause to take a review of the same. And that this may be done more effectually, and for the discharge of those greater officers (as our Lord Lieutenants or their deputies) by whom armies are first raised; euery Captaine (at his arrivall at the maine Rendivous) shall (when hee bringeth his Souldiers before the Mufter master to bee first viewed and received into pay) deliver to the Muster-master the Indenture which passed betweene him and the Lord Lieutenant, or his Deputie, at whose hands he received his men, and by that, the Muster-master shall call & view cuery man and his severall Armes particularly by them: felues, which found iust and according to the Indenture and the Instruct ctions of the Generall, presently the Muster-master shall give vnto the Captaine a Warrant of Entery containing the Captaines and his officers names, together with the full number of Souldiers as they are allowed in lift, with their severall payes and entertainments, & the day from whence fuch pay shall enure or begin, which Warrant signed vnder the Muster masters hand and feale, the Captaine shall deliver to the Treasurer or ynder-Treasurer, and from thenceforth receive his pay accordingly.

The second taking of Musters, is when the Souldiers are to depart into the field, or goe vpon any present or great service, at which time the Mufter-mafter shall (by a Booke received from the Captaine or his Clarker) and compared with his owne first Booke) take a view of all the Souldiers and Armes, & finding them ftrong and fufficient give them (by a bill) under his hand) full allowance for their meanes as was before shewed.

Now the third taking of Musters is after service performed, or when there is supposed to be any losse or decay in the Army; and this Musters he shall take by the first & second booke joyntly compared together and recording downe all fuch as shalbe lost either by the Sword, by sicknesse, or by any other cafualtie; also to take speciall notice of the exchange or alteration of any Soldier, or when any new man is entred, that an honest and true account may be kept betweene him, the Captaine and the Souldier for full count and reckoning, and in this muster (or any other) if hee shall find the company not to be full or in strength according to the list, then shall he defalke and make checke vpon the same; and in his certificat vato the Treasurer shall set downe the true and full number which shall be paid, and no more.

As thus at these three especiall times he shal take these severall viewes, so shall he also doe at any other time when the Generall shall appoint, or vpon the fuit of any Captaine (who having bene checkt and hath againe made vp his Company strong as before) desireth to haue it againe reuiewed, that he may receive certificat for his full entertainment. And in this taking of Musters or viewes, it is a great caution which every Mufter-mafter ought to observe, that by all meanes as hee makes severall diftinctions.

R 2

stinctions of names and Armes, so he must also distinguish nations & perfons, and not suffer the French to passe vnder the name of English, nor I. talian vnder the Dutch, for it is a matter of great consequence, & fuch vn. distinguisht mixtures have bred many confussions in the greatest armies and therefore after the first warning they are to be checkt and punisht feuerely. If the Army line vpon lendings, then at enery fix moneths end there is a count and reckoning to be had betweene the Prince and every Souldier which hath furnined and lived in the armie the full space of fix moneths and vpward, as thus for example: the ful pay of enery common Soldier is eight pence per diem, which amounteth to foure shillings eight pence the week: fo that having but three shillings a week lendings, there remaineth twentie pence a weeke to reckon for at the fixe moneths end. which commeth to betwixt forty shillings or seuen nobles a man, which commonly is paid in prouant apparell. It therefore appertaineth to the Muster-master by comparing his severall Books together, and noting the deaths and exchanges of men to make out his certificat to the Prouant. masters or Treasurer, what apparell or money shal be deliuered to every Captaine. This dutie I have knowne performed by an officer called the Controller of Musters, which because it stands upon no old foundation, but by him that euilly found it out, was as euilly put in execution, I would be loath therefore either to give it allowance or prefident. And therfore to conclude this Epistle, it is to be understood, that for as much as armies are large, and extend into many parts, so as it is impossible for any one man to exercise all these duties in his owne person, and in every place; therefore every Muster-master hath allowed vnder him divers Deputies or Substitues, which are called the Commisaries of Musters, who have the full powers of Muster-masters, and may performe all things in such fort as hath been formerly declared, and have for the fame competent allowances, befides commonly the dead pay of one privat Souldier from every Captaine that is within his Muster. Little more then what I have de-

clared doth depend vpon this Officer, and all that is faid if hee difcharge with an vpright and vnpartiall conscience, I dare be bold to affirme before your Lordship, that a better of the member (of his ranke and place) is hardly 10000 90000 and it racks you so to be found in the Armie. Then town into

and the Treather that the downs the cred and fall a caber which hall

the value of the search of the condition by receive circultario his fail enconsimment. And into

is the of toners preiewes, it is

et marter o mort to observe that by all

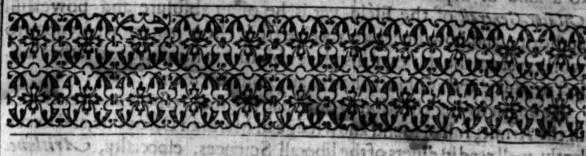
ad the company dot to be tall or it from according to the life, di he defalkeland make checke vrog che fame, and in his confinent

before effected that with that take thefe featurall view oc at any other time with the General! thall appoint, or

种是1502的3Hate norms his ages is been makes fenerall di-

Tinchens

wor the fuir of any Capian of who have bene check and high a line



# TOTHE RIGHT HONORABLE, EDWARD, LORD WOTTON OF BRAKING

o function together thicke in RAB THIR AM (afters be beginned of

## being a caded on by thefe ( see omely an equipped as manaber see or

## The Office of the Quarter-Master Generall.

Hen (my good Lord) I call to mind the Nobilitie and Antiquitie of your honord Name (which I ever loued) and the excellency of your disposition (which I cannot chuse but admire) presently mee thinks all my hast is but slow which drawes me to this daty. But when I bring into my consideration your learning, wisedome and experience, then methinkes mistrust in mine owne strength, makes

enery thing too nimble, and I feare I flie vnto you with those errors vpon my wings, which reason tells me I might better have concealed. But
you are good, you are noble, and they have long since told me the vanitie of my feares, since what I write being cloathed in a knowne Trath
and publique Benefit, (to which you have ever beene a support, ever a
maintenance) northing can come to your hands which shall not returne
crowned with your favours. In this hope armed I send forth my weake
Epistle, and howseover strictnes of opinion may search out how to finde
some naked places by which to assault it, yet (great Lord) let it but finde
the shaddow of your favour; and beleeve it, then I will not feare the
greatest enuy which can rife against it.

The Office (my Lord) of a Quarter-Master-Generall in an Armie is of no small Importance, but ought to carry Greatnes in himselfe, greatnesse in his place and greatnesse in the least shadow of his smalest duty, and howsoener he hath much correspondence and as it were adhering

to a kind of dependance vpon the Lord Marshall and the Serieure Maior-Generall of the Field, yet is he of an absolute and powerfull authority, and howsoeuer he receive from them matter whereupon to worke, yet are the duties of his place absolute in himselfe and rather sub-

iect to aduice and affistance then to any controlement.

He ought in his ellection to be a man of great respect and reverence in the Armie, full of sound knowledge in Marshall Discipline, and excellently well read in divers of the liberall Sciences, especially, Arithmeticke, Geometrie, and Astronomie, besides a pregnant understanding in the Art of Survey or the measuring of Grounds and drawing them into sundry partitions, being able upon view to take the bestaduantage thereof for any singular purpose, especially for the alledgement or accomo-

dation of men in the easiest and safest manner that may be.

The first maine part of his dury is (when the Lord-Marshall goeth forth to make ellection of the ground whereon to encampe the Armie) to summon together all the Inferior Quarter-Masters belonging to euerie seuerall Regiment, and those Quarter-Masters to call together every Furrier or Harbenger belonging to each scuerall Band or Company, and being attended on by these (in as comely an equipage as may bee) to attend vpon the Lord-Marshall to the place where he intendeth to place the Campe; and after the ground is a littell superficially survaid, and as it were pointed out by the Marshalls eie, the Quarter-Master-generall then with the affistance of the Scout-Master shall ride about that peece of ground which the Marshall had first appointed out, and survaying eucry aduantage and fituation of the fame, finding out where the approches are fittelt to be made, and where the forty fications are most necessarie to be raifed; He is first to deliver his opinion thereof to the Lord-Marshall, together with all the commodities and discommodities which he shall perceiue to depend voon the place, so that after due consultation had thereof by the Lord Marshall and his assistants, presently the forme of the entrenchment shall be staked out, the limits of the Marketplace appointed, and the Site of the Generalls Tent measured forth and laid according to the best comoditie of the place, which performed, the Quarter-master-generall shall deuide the whole ground into as many large bodies and great maine streets as there are seuerall Regiments conteined in the Armie, and according to the dignitic of their places allot out quarters for every Regiment whither they be Horse or Foote, and in such places as are most convenient for the ease, strength, sweetnesse, and safeguard of the Armie, and knowing by the number of men conteined in every Regiment, how much ground will ferue to receive them without pestring or annoying one another, and so as their lodgings may receive them and their Armes with all conveniencie, each man shall have sufficiencie and no mantoo much; and in this manner of quartering he shall first assigne the place for the Generalls paullion and place of alfembly, then the market place and place for munition, then all the horse and foote in their seuerall Regiments, then the victulers, the waggons

and all manner of Baggage; gining to each their diffinct places, and deuiding one quarter from another by convenient and large streetes; which assoone as he hath done, then the inferior Quarter-masters of the perticuler Regiments shall devide those large quarters which were allotted them by the Quarter-master-generall into leffer streets, and in them shall lodge enery company by it felfe, giving to the Colonell of the Regiment the first and especiall place, to the Linetenant Colonell the second; the Serieant Maior of the Regiment the third, and fo to every Captaine afterward according to his antiquitie; fo that when every man is acomodated and hath his Tent or Cabine pitcht vp, the whole Campe may be like an vniforme and handsome built Cittie, without any confusion or diforder, and the Streets paffing in fuch wife one into another that one company may come vnto another, and one Regiment paffe by another; and all approach into the Market-place, or place of generall affemblie, either voon an Allarme or other commandment, without diffurbance, trouble or amazement one to another; and againe, in quartering thus of the Armie, the Quarter-master-Generall shall seriously observe to quarter the Munition euer in the strongest and securest place of the whole Armie, as also the place of affembly (which is to aunswer all allarmes and is the Rendeuous vpon every amazement of the entire Armie) it shall both have as much strength as the nature of the place can affoard it, and also some other arteficiall guard whereby to rebate and drive backe the fury of the enemie. Againe, if the Armie be compounded of many severall Nations, it is the care and duty of the Quarter ma fter Generall to quarter enery Nation by it selfe, and to deale to equally and indifferently betweene one nation and another, fuiring their accommodations with fuch an euen and well proportioned hand, that no exception or dislike may be taken of any part, but all men receiving their Indifferent content, there may arise no cause of Muteny or Emulation; which cuer is most aptest to spring from these or the like grounds, as I could recite a world of Instances would either leasure or the limits of my paper allow it.

It is true that all grounds doe not give equal strength, and therefore associated as the Lord Marshall hath appointed out the most commodious place whereon to fixe the Campe, it is then the Quarter-master-Generals duty to share and devide it into the severall perticulars as hath beene before shewed, and in those devisions he shall (as nere as conveniently hee can) devide all those naturals strengths in such wise that every Supreame Offscer may participate something thereof, and what is wanting in the worke of nature, to leave it to be supplied by art through the diligence of the Trench-master or Engne-master to whose charge it aperteineth.

Now for the generall Marshalling or Quartering of a Campe; that I may give a little taste or essay thereof, it is to be vndrestood that in the Center or mid point of the Campe shall bee first lodged the Generalls Sanderd, and nere vnto it his Pauilion; from whence shall bee derived two maine great streets each crossing the other, then vpon one side of

the Generall shall be quartered the Lord Marshall, on the other side the Treasurer with extraordinary Gentlemen of high Ranke, whether Embaffadors or others; on the third fide shall be quartered the Munition. and on the fourth shall lie the Market-place; and these foure streets shall butt on the foure corners as South North, East and West, In a Streete behinde the Generall shall be quartered the Liuetenant Gene. rall of the Horse, behind the Lord Marshall the Liverenant Generall of the Foote, and behind the Munition the Master of the Ordnance and the Serieant Maier of the Field ; then behinde thefe Inferior Streets all the Companies of Horse and Foote, according to their Ranke and antiquitie of Commandments; behind them the Victuallers, Butchers Cookes Bakers and the like; behind them carriage horses, draught Oxen and Cattell for the Campe, and behind them the Waggons, Waggoners, Carters, Laborers and Pioners, and in a Quarter opposite against them the Gunners and Officers of the Ordnance, all the Carpenters, Wheelewrights, Smiths and Labourers : and in another quarter opposite to them are quartered all the Armorers, Cutlers and other Tradefmen belonging to the Store, as also Tailors, Shoomakers and the like; then last. ly about the outmost verge or outer Ring of the Campe, (yet within the fortification) is (as a guard) placed all the great Ordnance, vpon a Vasmure of earth arteficially cast up before them; then the general Intrenchmet of the Campe shall be about threescore or fourescore paces without the Ordnance, which shall not be drawne into any even line, but into as many angles as may be. And thus your Lordship hath a briefe Fac simile of the Quarter-Mafters Office, which though it be not fo exact in every

Geometricall proportion as Art could wish it, yet is it (I hope)
drawne into so near e a resemblance, that no eie but may
Iudge of that which is perfect when his reading
or experience shall at any time en-

The second of a contact of

out of the first this was

TO

**有意思,所谓是这种** 

Ed to the Park adago the own



#### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE FRAN-CIS LORD RVSSELL

of THORNHAVGH.

#### THE ARGVMENTA Of the Captaine of the Pioners.

right Air i as what place or reply to mer, only it



He infinit bond (my deare respected Lord) in which I stood euer bound to your thrice noble father, and the happy memory of your hardly to bee equal'd grandfather (who in his life time was one of the greatest pillars which supported our poore House) are inducements fo ftrong to call vpmy feruice toattend you, that besides the generall Obligation of the worke, yet in mine owne nature I could not fuf-

fer this Epiftle to escape you, but as it necessarily fals vpon your noble Range, fo I must earnestly beseech your Lordship to imagine, that howfocuer it life or stammer out a plaine and homely falutation, yet it withes you as many true and worthic felicities as the best Art can number; or the smoothest tongue with the delicatest Rhetoricke can declare.

The Office on which mine Anchor in this place taketh hold, is (my good Lord) that which we call in the warres, the Captain or chiefe commander of the Pioners, who of himselfe is a man of good regard and esteeme, and one in whom there ought to be all the Gentlemanlie & best parts of a good Soldier; for by how much his command is ouer a raskally, rude, ragged, and vneiuill regiment of barbarous and ill-taught people, by fo much should his Temperance & vertue more exceed, that he might tame and frame their minds to a civill obedience, then which no labour can be more thankfull vinto God, nor pleasing vinto men, being the onely testimony of a found judgement, and the worke of the best desired examples. It is true, that these Pioners are a consused masse of labouring people, brought vp only to digge and delue the earth, without any civil nourture, or indeed decent humanitie, and therefore are not reckoned Soul-

Souldiers, neither come neere by many degrees either to that lift or reputation, but are so farre contrary to all things which have any shew of honor, that it is one amongst the punishments of criminals, when any common Souldier shall commit a sleight offence, sauouring either of carelesnes, flouthfulnes, or basenes, then presently to take away his Sword, and make him a Pioner, which in times past I have knowen so hatefull and intollerable to every quick and vnderstanding spirit, that they would with more alacrity haue run to the Racke, the Bolts or Strappado, nay euen to death it selfe rather then to this mortall (as they supposed it) degradation : fuch contempt was the poore Pioner in, and fo difgracefull appeard that change to the Souldier; yet questionlesse this I must affirme, that at all approches, mounts, trenches, and vnderminings, the poore Pioner is in as great danger, as often flaine, and both comes on vpon his worke, and goes off from his worke with as doubtfull and as great hazards as any man in the Army of what place or ranke foeuer; only it is the bare opinion(without ground) which makes it vile, & the meannesse of their condition: for the service it selfe is both noble and necessary, nor can an Army be or fubfift without them. And hence it hath come to passe that in these our latter warres (especially in the Low countries, and vnder the commaund of the most excellent Prince of Orange) to take away this ill grounded opinion of the basenesse of Pioners, and to saue an infinit matter of expence (which otherwise must have been disburst vpon these particular provisions) they have caused all their common souldiers in generall to turne Pioners, making them weare both Swords & Spades, which questionles at first they drew on by gentle, politike, and smooth degrees, as in some great case of necessitie, where present assurance would allow no stay, but that all men must be imployed: and to this doubtlesse some great Commaunder (with his owne hand) gaue the first example; or elfe they were inticed by the promise of some extraordinary allowance (as what is it with which profit will not make most men dispence) so that in the end finding many of these oceasions, and faining some, at last it grew to a custome, and what at first with some difficultie they entreated, now they began boldly to commaund; so that collecting the infinite charge which was faued, and the great expedition and also exactnes with which their workes are performed, they began to make it penall in any man which should refuse this (late but despised) vndertakings. To which some of our English Commanders, more willing (for their owne ends) to gratifie the Dutch, then to prouide for their owne Countrey-mens case and fafety, gaue so farre way, that now it is a thing vtterly vnrecouerable amongst them; for mine owne part I doe know, and must ever acknowledge that it is the dutie of every brave and generous Spirit (in cases of great necessitie) to imagine that no danger, toyle or basenes can be too much, where either the glory of God, the service of his Prince, or the safetie of his Countrie is ingaged: but in all occasions, and at all times to make the well-deseruing Souldier an ordinary packe-horse, I cannot but thinke the discipline too strickt, and that it doth as it were give a wound of discouragement

ragement to every generous break, making the sweet delight of the wars turne irkesome and unpleasing. Besides it was never yet disputable in any discipline of warre, but that Pioners were ever necessary, both for the making of Mines, Trenches, & Passages, for the carying and recarying of all maner of Engines, for placing bridges, loading and unloading of all kind of munition, and many other works of importance, for which ends they are ever armed with Spades, Crowes of yron, Levers, Pickaxes, Baskets, and wheele-barrowes, to which who locuer shall imploy the necessary Souldier, shall be sure ever to want his hand in a more needfull labour.

Now for the especiall dutie of the Captaine Generall of this Regiment, he is first to looke to the keeping of them in good order, concord and obedience, to see that they have their pay and intertainment (according to their rates) in as due and sit manner as any other common Souldiers; that they keepe safely, and make not away any of the tooles or instruments wherewith they are armed, and that they be continually in readi-

neffe vpon every call for any imployment: wash who ap live one, some

If the Lord-Marshall, the Serieant-Maior, of the Trench-Master shall draw the platforme of any Trench, whether it be for the fortification of the Campe, or for the affailing of any belieged Towne, whether it be to bring men to the affault, or elfe to throw vp and countermine any worke of the enemies, presently you the first summons given to the Captaine of the Pioners, he shal raise so many of his men as shall be commanded by the Lord Marshall or other superiour Officer, and with them (armed with all tooles convenient for the service) shall march to the head or beginning of the Trench, and hauling received directions, together with the forme and figure of the worke which is to be made, hee shall foorthwith take a spade, and himselfe dig vp the first turfe, and then all the Pioners by that example shall instantly fall to their labor, and dig the Trench according to directions, during which time he shall be ever with them, giving them all maner of incouragement, and prouiding that every man do his dutie without flacknes, neglect, or any flouthfull action : If he find that the labor be fore and difficult, he shall then at his discretion relieue them, by bringing new supplies, and sending away those that are ouerwearied, that they may be againe refreshed; and thus he shal without ceasing cause the worke to be continued, till every thing be finished according to the will of the fuperiour Commander. And in this worke is to be observed, that if it be to be done in the face of the enemy, and where their shot may freely play vpon them, that then ere the Pioners begin to dig, they shall plant barrels and great vessels fil'd with earth and plac't in double rowes before them, under whose guard, or the guard of some other wall, hill, mount or gabion they shalbegin to dig, til they have coucred themselves in the earth, & then they are past perill, and may proceed to work at their pleasures; and whensoeuer they either come from their work, or go vnto their worke, still their Colours must flie before them; for the Captaine of Pioners is as capable of Colours as any other Captaine whatfocuer, and may beare them mixt with the Ensigne of the kingdome in what maner him-S 2

himselfe pleaseth. As thus he bringeth them to the digging of Trenches & Mines, fo also it is his dutie to bring them to the making of Bulwarks or Mounts placed upon Angles, fome lading & carying the earth in bar rels, baskers, and wheele barrows, by which are framed the Transfles or flankers of the Bulwarke, the Orechien which is the guard or shoulder of the Bulwark, the Curtaine which is the Front, the Counterfront, which are the Spurrs, the Pestils or Parapets, the entrance in & out, and the place for the Artillery, some ramming, some knocking in piles to fasten the carth. and some cutting vp turfe & fods with which to affure the groundwork. and as in these, so in all other matters of Fortifications, these Pioners are of very necessary vse, and the Captain shalbe sure to have them ever rea. dy vpon any moment of warning, as either when any new workes are to be framed, or any old repaired : for albe these Fortifications of earth are better refisters of the Cannon then those of stone worke, and both make lesse ruines and also are lesse assailable, yet they are but of short continuance, and will quickly decay by reason of the loosenesse of the mould if they be not continually visited with carefull eyes, and presently mended by artificiall & good workmen. To conclude it is the office of the Captaine of the Pioners to fee his Regiment euer quartered as necre vnto the munition as is possible, both because they are properly appertaining thereunto being the men to carry and recarry, to load and vnload the fame) as also because all the necessary tooles and Engines wherwith they worke, and which they must daily alter according to the alteration of their labors, are stored and preserved in the same.

This is the substance and effect of this office, the which how soener a greater knowledge may cloath in a great number of more wordes, yet I dare affure your Lordship, they will still but arrive at the

fame end, and though the Garment may bee fomewhat better to looke on, yet it will be little more casie, more in fashion, or longer lafting.

and aborder for early difficultational at the part to a contraction religion to the an

or nimging now lings loss and ing the way those wat are out a call aluma per saint production and the back of which we were

Unorketo he consided ryleakly tiling be invised according re

magnety & than they are pathy and may pur

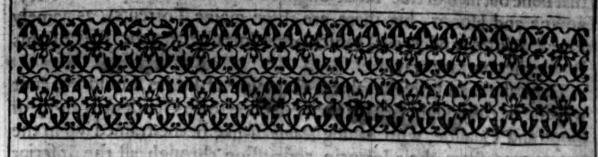
ter worker hill thelp Ottoms much a speciage them, out he

visas que ble of Colony a day of her Castalic who

may bourge their points with the light of the large one in the angular

Hofthoff perious Commander. And in this we have to be oblerated hard little to be done in the face of the easily, and where the inflormaty

redy play won chein, the chep a con c Places beeth to the chey had Of Turking and great vestels at a self-carries of was the state of dore than, under whole edard, or the concept to accordentall, nouncer globou they that begined the takey bene council the midles



### TOTHERIGHT HONORABLE, HIS SINGVLAR GOOD LORD, HENRY LORD

GRAY OF GROODY.

#### THE ARGUMENT.

I bee why swift eight wife of in the cl

#### Of the Captaine of Foot.



Very one (my Lord) is so great a lover of his owner defignes, that he is easie to be flatterd with any hope that can lend beauty to the same, yet I hope it shall not so fare with me in this Epistle, for fince you haue with all felicitie linckt in Marriage with that fweetest Goodnesse, to whose Noble Father I stand bound for almost all the strengths of my present fortunes, I doubt not but my hopes will convert to af-

furances in your favour, and howfoeuer this Epiftle challenge your attention for at least a couple of minuts, yet in as much as it shall bring you a plaine tale from an honest breast, and a willing service from a faithfull heart, Ifeare not but you will vouchsafe to accept it. Beleeue it (honord Sir) there is no flattery in it, for neither are you a fubicat on whom I durst vent such follie, nor haue I a soule (I hope) guilty of fo base

A Captaine of Foote or of the Infantrie, is the highest of all private Commanders and yet the lowest of all that command in cheife, and howfoeuerthere is abilitie in a Captaine to create Inferior Officers; yet cannot a Captaine by any meanes make a Captaine, but he is euermore deriued from the King himselfe, or from his especiall authority granted to Generalls of Armies. The Lords of his Privie counsell, the Governors of Garrisons, Viceroyes or Presidents of Countryes, or else to the Lords Liverenants of perticular Shiers: so that hence we may collect,

that

that none but men of true merit ought to aspire to these places of Renowne and Honor; but there are three maine Torrents (as namely Fraud, Flatterie and Bribes) which oftentimes blowes the Bias of this

Bowle the contrary way.

To speake then briefely what a Captaine of Foote should be, (not what he is) they ought first for their ellection to be Gentlemen both of Blood and Qualitie, who haulng Haniball-like beene trained vp in the warres even from their Infancie, and passing through all the Inferior places of Command, Anchor now with good opinion at that of the Linetenant; whence for his experience he is worthy to be advanc't to a Captaine, (for it is an heartbreake to an expert Souldier to bee commanded by an ignorant Cheistaine) let our Captaine then in briefe be a man that seares God, skilfull in his profession, (as having past through all the Inferior Offices below him) vertuous in his examples, wise in his actions, politique in his affaires, valiant introubles, carefull in daungers and vigilant in all occasion.

For matter of his duty he shall bee wonderfull circumspect in the ellection of his Inferior Officers, prouiding such as are fit to governe, not such as he must be compelled to instruct, and herein he shall give the first taste or season of his perfection, for in chusing those which are worthy, he sheweth the worthines of his owne knowledge, and in chusing those which are vnsit, hee expressent the weakenesse of an ill Judging Nature.

The companie fit for a Captaine to command, are full two hundred be besides the great Officers, for a lesse number is Insufficient, & a greater full of trouble, it would be deuided into two equall parts, of which one would be all Pikes, & the other all Musquets, & ouer both his Linetenant shall gouerne absolute in his absence, and as the second in command whenfoeuer the Captaine is present. He shall have an Ensigne who shall carry his Colours or Honer, (being of noble and no base mixture) Hee shall have a Surgeon to whom every Souldier shall allow one weekes pay towards the lenying of his Cheft of Salues and Instruments: Hee shall have two Drummes and two Phifes, foure Serieants each commanding fifty Souldiers, eight Corporalls each commanding foure and twenty, and fixteene Lanspesados each commanding eleauen; and out of all thefe he shall ellect one of the best understanding, whom he shall make the Furrier or Harbenger for the appointing out of the allodgments for the whole Company. and i some food lands nour may into

Touching the foure Squadrons into which the whole Body of the Companie is devided, the first (which shall be compounded of the most expertest and principall men of the companie) shall appertaine to the Captaine himselfe, and bee called his Squadron (for in it the greatest commander in the Army may traile a Pike and serve without disparagement) the second shall belong to the Livetenant: the third to the Ensigne, and the sourch to the eldest Serieant; this done he shall first by examples and perswarions incite all his Souldiers to the service of God, which consistent in Timor and Amor, then to obedience towards their

Com-

Commanders abiding in Reverentia exhibenda, In mandato suscipiendo and In Indicio subeunda; and lastly to a true performance of their duties in all the actions of Military Discipline, and may bee briefely drawne into these few heads, sound of the Drumme, Posture, Distance and Motion.

It is the Captaines duty to looke to the appealing of all debates, and fo to roote out the feeds of fedition that no Muteny may spring vp amongst his Souldiers; He shall suppresse (as much as in him lies) all e-uill liners, & where Instruction workes no cure, there let sharpe examples make others fearefull; He shall boldly and brauely lead them on to allencounters of the enemie, charge before them and with them, and bring them off with care and discretion: He shall not at any time suffer them to breake their Array or March out of order, for such disorder is the ouerthrow of an Armie, and from the tolleration of one euill, will in an Instant springe a thousand more Inconveniences; and therefore it is the duty of a good Captaine, not to give way to any licentious attempt, but rather by the constancy of his severity to take away all hope from

Incorrigible and wilfull offendors.

The weapon with which the Captaine shall serue in his owne person is very much disputable in these daies amongst the best Souldiers, some for brauery wil carry nothing but a rich Feather-staffe, all wrought, guilt and curioufly taffelled, but this eueryone knowes is not fit to fight withall, for neither is it of abilitie to wound deepe, nor of length or substance to encounter either with Pike, Partizan, Halbert, nor with a good Sword and Target. Others will serue with a Pike, but that is found much too vanimble and troublesome for his place, for having once brought his men vp to the push, he can have no more vse of that weapon, their pressing upon him, taking from him all meanes aboue once to charge it. And some will serue with a Sword and guilt Target, but that is found as much too short, and ere he can get within the enemies Pike his life will bee in great hazard : fo that in conclusion (according to the oppinions of the best Souldiers) the only weapons for a Captaine, are a faire Feather-staffe in the time of Peace or for glory in a Garrison, but in the time of service and in the face of the enemie, then a faire guit Partizan richly trim'd, being not aboue twelve inches of blade, sharpe and well steeled, for it is able to encounter against any manner of weapon; as for the Spanish priviledge to serve sometimes with the Harquebush, and sometimes the Alusquet; neither are the weapons suiting for his place, neither can a Captaine applie himselfe to their execution without an veter wound to all his directions.

If the Captaine be commanded to any peece of service (of what nature soever) he shall goe to it willingly and cheerefully, making good all his superiors directions to the vertermost commandment, but not exceeding the limits (though intic't with never so great hopes) for it is not lawfull for him to take vpon him a knowledge, which his superior hath concealed from him. When his turne commeth to the Captaine of the Watch or Guard, he shall send his Serieant to the Serieans Major to setch

the Word, or to some other that hath order for the same, and by that Word (at night) he shall direct all his Sentinels and Corpes de Guards, and himselfe in person shall goe the first Round, yet receuing the Word not giving it; but when he pleafeth the to fearch Sentinels or Rounds, out of voluntary disposition, then he shall give the Word and not receive it He shall be obedient to all the Supreame Officers of the Field, to his own Co. lonell, the Linetenant Colonell and Serieant Maior of his owne Regiment : He shal prouide for all necessaries belonging to his company; as Money, Meate, and Munition : He shall ever lodge and have his Tent amongst them, feede with them, and give them all the examples of hardnesse and frugaltie.

To conclude and finish vp this Epistle, hee shall bee of a sweete and temperate disposition amongst them, intreating, aduising, instructing and commanding them with all the noble & pleafing Language that Nature, Art or study can produce, and not as men teach Dogges, or Bearwards Apes with Bitts and Blowes, for it is an vnmanly and abfurd crueltie, neither begetting loue nor respect, but Ingendring hate and discontentment, whereas if he did rightly looke into the true nature of his condition, the Father should be no more tender ouer his Children then

the noble Captaine ouer his well deferving Souldier, for that will linke and joyne them together as men made of one peece, and as having but one head to contriue, one heart to encourage, one hand to execute, and but one foule to flie to Erernity. ..... I face brown

much too volumble and their less bis clace, for himse once

remain the feet of the control of th

The secretary of a significance of the secretary of the s

and or the contract of the con

ni ned secreto contente a con o con China China China ות נותר של לבינול בנו ומושבו בנים ביות לחות בנים ביות לחברות בולות מלמור ביות לומים

and former the care of the free for the weapons terral for his pace, new her count Coffee oppile hardelfero their execution without

medicently in the first and control to the common with the expension of the common with the co

on si ii tol segod is te of reuer to a fine i panel ) who it do not within the rote to the state on the state of the superior has to see that the late Way on the common art country Way and to be the common at the a partie of the first and the Sent anticome one Senten Man to the senten

e Corpolar Stroke Lander Contypes Configurate Column na-

Taled Fridge about the same regainst sey manner of weapon; stor the Space in prior of the role of the mention of the street of

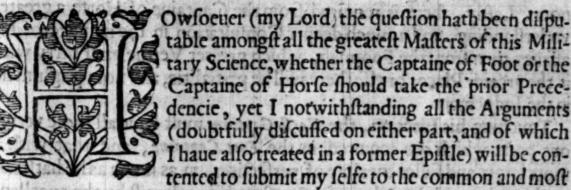


### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE WIL-LIAM LORD PETER

of WRITTLE.

#### THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Captaine of Horse.



generall received opinion; which is, that the Horseman (though not in particular, yet in the ordinary vse) ought to receive the vpper hand in dignitie: for in France amongst their Gentlemen at Armes, and also amongst the Reisters, the Lieutenants, albe they have not place nor voyces in Marshall Courts, yet hold themselves in all Rankes equall with Captaines of Foot, yet not every Lieutenant of Horse, but some of an espetiall order, for it is to be conceived, that in Horse troupes all are not of one lineage (as Foot-Companies are) but differ in dignitie, order, and estimation, according to the worthinesse of the Armes which the Horseman beareth: for in the first times when Horsemen were in the height of their glories, the Lieutenant to a Troupe of Gentlemen at Armes, was accounted better then a Captaine of an hundred Foot; a Lieutenant of Launciers his equall; and a Lieutenant of Light-horse his next and imediate younger brother, and before all Lieutenants of Foot whatfoeuer: fo in like manner in these our present times, a Lieutenant of a Troupe of complear armed French Pistoliers, is reputed better in degree then a Captaine of an hundred Foot, a Lieutenant of the late inuented T

invented Dragoones (being not aboue fixteene inche Barrell, and full Musquet bore) the Foot-Captaines equall, and the Lieutenant of a Troupe of Harquebusiers or Carbines his immediate younger Brother. Againe, Horsemen challenge the dignitie of their places according to the numbers which they hold in lift, and according to the manner and forme of raising those numbers; for a Captaine of a hundred Horse (notwithstanding any former Antiquitie) is better then a Captaine of fiftie; A Capraine of an hundred and fiftie, will euer take place of a Captaine of one hundred, and a Captaine of two hundred Horse carry on his left hand'a Captaine of an hundred and fiftie Horfe; and fo contrariwise ranking with the Foot fiftie Horse, precedes an hundred Foot; an hundred horse, two hundred foot, and so of all numbers whatfoeuer: and to this the Horsemen doe adde fundry Reasons, saying that a man may as easily raise fine hundred Foot, as fiftie Horse; and a thoufand Foot, as one hundred Horse: now if the Captaine raise this Troupe of his owne charges, it must needs argue that hee is of greater estate, and hath made himselfe liable to a greater charge then any Footman can doe, and so consequently deserueth a greater respect from the Magistrate, and more serious reuerence from the common people. But if the Prince raise the Companies, then it includes, that he inferres vpon the Horseman the greater Trust, and so of necessitie the greater honour. Lastly, there is required from the Captaine of Horse a greater vnderstanding, and a much deeper Consultation in the manage of his affaires then from the Footman, which greater Vertue must carry with it the greater Place, or else there will be partialitie, and not vprightnesse in the ludgement.

Touching his Election, the Horse-Captaine must have all those vertuous parts which are acquired in the Foot-Captaine, and that with a more larger and fuller measure of perfection, in as much as he hathnot onely to doe with Man, but with Beaftes also, and must by the excellencie of his owne gouernment tame and bring to obedience both wilde Man, wilde Horse, and sometimes Boyes wilder then either the one or the other creature. And to this Fasickle or bundle of vertues (which are needlesse againe to repeat) hee must have one other excellencie added, which is as good, as great, as necessary, and as glorious as any of the other, and that is, he must bee a perfit and absolute Horseman, not knowing (like one of our Signe-Saint Georges ) onely how to bestride and fit vpon a horse faire armed without motion, but how and in what manner both to mooue himselfe and the horse, making an vnreasonable Beast doe reason to all his commaundements, and by the motions of his hand, legge, or body, to vnderstand as from a sensible language to performe all things belonging to the mans reasonable pleasure. In plainenesse hee shall not onely bee a good Horseman himselfe, but also shall with diligence labour to make his whole Troupe good Horsemen, teaching them first how to sit voon their horses in a faire and comely pasture, carrying their bodies straight and vpright, the right hand bea-

ring his Launce, or Piftoll coucht vpon his thigh, the left hand (with the Bridle raine) vinder the guard of the pommell of the Saddle, and the legs close and straight by the horses side, with the Toes turned a little inward, and the horse standing constantly and firme without rage or distemperance, yet in all his beautie and glory, his lip alone playing vpon the Curbe, his Necke bended, his Head couched, and the Raines of the Bridle vnftrained, which are all the Postures to be vsed in standing still : then how to put him foorth either by yeelding of the body, or thrusting forward of the mans legs into a short or large trot (with all the Postures beforefaid) which is as much as is required in marching; then how by the even stroke of both the Spurres to passe into a swift carriere, and first to dismount the Launce from the thigh; secondly, to gather in the arme, and to lay open the right elbow, bringing the Launce towards the Reft, and lastly, to lay it vpon the Rest, and turne the poynt inward to make good the breach or encounter, which three Postures are all that belong to charging: then how to gallop the field, either in large Rings, middle or leffe Rings, either on the one or the other hand, carying his body enen and straight, without bending forward or backward, or declining more to one hand then the other; and then his Launce being broken, to draw. foorth his Pistoll, with the right hand to raise the cocke, and either to charge it (if it have been discharged) or to prepare it for a discharge on a second encounter; and this is as much as is required in falling off, and comming on againe. Then how to manage, that is, vpon a gentle gallop to passe forthright in an even line, & to encounter either with the sword or the Battle-axe, in which hee is to observe, first his Posture of setting forward and drawing his Sword ouer his Bridle arme, then the raising of his arme, and carying it close by the side of his body, then (at the encounter) the discharging it vpon the Helmet of the enemy, then passing by, and having broken it, to stop gently and upon the halfe stop to turne fwiftly and roundly, and then vpon the turne Terra, Terra, to enter into fingle combat: then lastly, how to retire backe, or to make the horse slie fidewayes either on the one fide or on the other, according as the aduantage of fight shall give him occasion, and in all these to vie the posture of vpright and constant cariage, both of body and weapon, which no words but practife, is able to deliuer to an ignorant vnderstander.

For the generall parts of this Captaines dutie (as much as concerneth the ciuill gouernment of his company) they are all those which belong to the Captaine of Foot, only with an augmentation of care, in as much as he hath to prouide both for Man and Beast: and therfore it is his Office after the wholsome accommodation of his men, to looke to the best prouisions which may be had for his horse, according to the nature and necessitie of the place in which he liueth, as if it be grasse, hay, straw, forrage, dry corne, raw corne, pulse, or the like, and of these to know which is most wholesome, which vnwholesome, and accordingly to moderate and temperat the diet of his horses. As if he have good dry hay, wholesome grasse, or drie corne, he may then suffer his horses to feed liberally,

T 2

to rest from trauell if occasion be, and to water as oft as he please; but if he haue nothing for his horse, but Forage, raw come, or pulse, hee shall then let them feed sparingly, giue much exercise, and water not aboue once in a day: it is also meet that he know the nature of all horse foods to preuent surfet and diseases in his horses; as that sweet Hay is nourishing; Straw, extreme binding; and Forage, cooling and loosning; Wheat nourisheth much, but soone cloyeth a horse; dry Barley or old Mault breedeth the heart-burning in a horse, and will (if he eat much) make him subject to tyring; Rye will force him to shoot, scowre, and indeed makes a horse weake and sicke: but Beanes, Pease, and Oates (so they be sweet and dry) are the most wholesome and naturall for a horse: but if otherwise, they breed the Belly-ake, Bots, and other soule diseases, and therefore to preuent all mischieses, bee sure (if you can) to giue them rather vnthrasht then thrasht, for the straw will correct many euils which would else follow.

To conclude, for all privat duties belonging to this Captaine, as for his Eurolling, Mustering, receit of Pay, distribution of Victuals, Quartering, taking of his true Range and Place, obedience to his supreme Officers, and all things else what soeuer belongeth to his particular person; they are the same (quantities only excepted) which belong to the

Captaine of Foot, and in that Epistle may be read and vnderstood by any diligent or skilfull Interpretation.

1 420 Maria Day Day Day Olding a scious

is the deal of the bull of the property of the control of the cont

contest vi com, pui

TO



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE AND HIS NOBLE LORD

HENRY, LORD DANVERS

of DANT-SEY.

# THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Serieant Maior of a Regiment.



Hen (my Lord) I saw you in the warres fighting and bleeding, your noble courage commanded my tongue to praise you, but when (wounded my selfe) I selt your bounty and sauour, you then compelld my heart to loue you. O let me to these two bring you a thrid (though plaine) yet an honest and faithfull Seruant, and that is this short Epistle, which if you shall please to reade, then shall you nobly binde

my Tongue, my heart, and pen euer to serue you; The Sacrifice I send you is Warre (in it I know you have beene well pleased) the Altar from whence it arises is mine Affection (Honor should not dispise it) and the Place to which I would have it arise is your good Opinion; where if it find harbour like a plummet cast into a faire calme Sea; from one poore prick it shall drive many large and plentifull Circkles.

The course into which (by this warlike range) I am now conducted, brings me (in this place) to fixe vpon the Office of the Serieant-Maior of a Regiment, or Squadron of men compounded of sundry Companies, being as it were a little deminitive Battell or Colonie, over which the Colonell is as Generall, the Linetenant Colonell as Linetenant Generall, the Serieant-Maior as Marshall, and the rest of the Captaines as the Inferior Commanders.

The Serieant-Major of a Regiment is ever some especiall Captaine of most appropulation of appropulation of most appropulation of the colonest series of the rest, either in Experience, Vinderstanding, Valour, or else (which is least accountable) in the Colonests perticular affection, and so hath given vinto him this place of precedencie and commandment before the

rest of the Inferior Captaines. It is true that hee ought very carefully to be chosen, both in respect of his Wisdome and Temperance, but esse cially for his skill and experience, for there is much more required from him then from an ordinary Captaine, and touching the reverence of his place, he ought to be a man of eminent note both beloved and feared for there is in him a generall power of controlment, fo that should the least want of perfection draw him into contempt, it were an viter losse to his Reputation, and an infinite great weakening to the whole Service. It is then to be vnderstood, that if the Regiment or Battalion consist which I wish, and whereto all approved Souldiers both auncient and moderne giue allowance) of one thousand men deuided into fine seuerall Companies, and each Company holding the contents of two hundred mena peece, that then the Serieant-Maior hath his raunge iust in the mid'st. two marching before him (that is to fay the Colonell and the Linetenant-Colonell) and two marching behind him (which are the two young. est and Inferior Companies) so that two command him, and two are commanded by him; yet in the absence of the Colonell and Linetenant-Colonell, he then commandeth all the fine Companies, and hath superior command about all Captaines and Inferior Officers whatfocuer, being as the Colonell himselfe.

The Serieant-Maior of a Regiment is the imediate next degree about an ordinary Captaine, and reputed in all places to precead them as being their elder Brother. Now touching the effects of his duty and Office in the Regiment, he is (as before I faid) the Marshall of the whole Battalion or Squadron, and as the one ruleth and formeth what proportions foeuer he pleaseth of the whole Army, so this man deuideth, subdeuideth, and fashioneth what figures and formes he pleaseth of his owne Regiment, and as the Serieant-Maier of the Armie bringeth vp, (by the appointment of the Marshall) great Grosses compounded of fundry Regiments to make up the forme and figure of the Battell he intendeth: to doth this Sericant-Maior of a Regiment bring up vnto the Sericant-Maior of the Armie, either all or part of his Regiment, (in fuch forme as hee shall becappointed) to the making up of the Grosse and greater Body; wherein is to be noted that as Serieants of Bands are affiftant to the Serieant-Maiors of Regiments for deuiding of perticular Spuadrons, Files or halfe Files, for the making vp of any Body whether it confift of odde, euen, broken or whole numbers (according to directions) fo the Serieant-Maiors, of Regiments are affiftant to the Serieant-Maior of the Armie, in bringing vp to him what Deuisions or Bodies soeuer shall bee called for, whether they confift of ods, evens or any other certaine or vncertaine number, for it is a thinge impossible either for Lord-Marshall or the Serieant-Maior of an Army, to take vpon him the manage of every mans perticular company, or to do those great and powerful duties which are expected at their hands without fome ftrong & fufficient assistance, whence it comes that the private Captaines, by the assistance of the ordinary Scrieants keeping their companies or order, the Serieant-

Majors of Regiments by the care of the private Captaines keeping the Regiments in crue forme, and the Sericant-Maier of the Army by the skill of the Serieant-Maiors of Regiments being able to forme Groffe Bodies into what figure hee thinkes convenient, the Lord Marshall of the Field may in a trice and vpon the Instant of any word given, Forme, vnforme, change or alter any Battell according as either the advantage of the ground, the manner of the enemies marching or any other perticuler occurrent shal administer occasion. And that this duty may be performed with all carefull fenerity, enery Serieant Meier of a Regiment (either in long marches or otherwife) is allowed his backney to ride on from company to company, and to looke that as the Captaines doe rangetheir Companies in an orderly and true forme, that so likewise the whole Regiment confift of an even, just and beautifull proportion, and not fuffering any man (of what degree focuer) either through Pride, Stubborneffe, Neglect, Coneton fues of Pilage, or any other dilitory & weake excuse, to breake or goe out of his Ranke, or to disproportion any part of the maine Body by any rude or vncomely Posture, but your the first apprehension thereof, leuearely to rebuke the same and compell a speediereformation : for it is a customary thinge in the warres that men of great Birth and qualitie doe viually traile Pikes, and what through the guard of their Captaines fauor, the rashnesse of their owne youthfull wills, the presumption of other mens examples, and the assuming of an vnnecessary freedome from some other perticuler beholdingnes, they grow off times diforderly and vnruly and will not bee commanded by the ordinary Sergeants, or at least the Sergeant dare not command, where he knowes admonition will but bring backe contempt to breed a much worse example; in this case the Serieant-Alaier is presently to arme himselfe with his owne power and to let such offendors know, that Blood hath no priviledge if once it rebell against Obedience, and that Gentlemen doe runne backe from their vertue into the Bassenes of every earthtic condition, when they forget that their Commanders have a Goodnes worthy their Obodience, an Authority fitto exercise their Patience, and a Knowledge to which they ought to tie their vttermost Diligence: Nay, it is certaine that a Gentleman cannot expresse Love in any thing more then in Reverence, Dutie in nothing like Obedience, not Modestie but when hee admires his Commanders Excellence. Our Sericant-Maior then being a Captaine and a principall Commander, is to roote out enormities and to plant these vertues in every Souldiers bosome, neither will the blood of hot and vntamed Spirits be so apt to boyle over and exceede the Bounds of Rreason when they are commanded by a greater then themselves, as they are when an Inferior (in their owne opinion) seekes to restraine them; And therefore it behooues the Serieant-Maior in these reprehentions, not only to shew his owne but also all other Officers authorities that are below him, limming and painting them out in such lively (but dreadfull Colours) that hee may strike a terror and feare into all offenders. The The Serieant Major of a Regiment vpon all encampments or allodge ments of the Armie is to attend the Serieant Major of the Field, & when the Campe is deuided out into Regiments, he with his Quarter-Mafter shall take the Regiment belonging to his Colonell according to his Colonels antiquitie or greatnes of place, and first shall demonstrate to the Quarter-Master which way to contriue and cast his maine streets according to the greatnes or littlenes of the ground and the best convenience for passing in and out; then where to place the Colonells Tent and Colonels, where the Livetenant Colonells, and where his owne, and for the rest they are so be referred to the Quarter-Masters discretion.

If the Regiment shall be removed far from the Armie, either placed in Garrison, or to defend or offend some other place, then shall the Serieant-Maior both in the Fieldor otherwise performe both the Office of the Serieant-Maior and of the Marshall, shall summon Courts of Warre with the assistance of his fellow Captaines and proceede to trial against offendors, shall proportion out all Allodgments and Encampings, and with his best Skill fortefie the same, shall vpon any fight draw the Battell into order, give to every man his place according to lot or Antiquitie and (taking his directions from the Colonell) shall either Charge, Second, or bring off according to his discretion, with many other Circumstances as Time and occasion shall administer in the mannaging

of affaires,

Lastly it is the Office of the Serieant-Major to take care of all the Guards and Watches which are about the Regiment, and if there been o greater Officer then himlelse, there to give the Word and to appoint the Corps de Guard and Sentinells, if there be a more Superior, then from him the Serieant-major shall receive it and so give it to the Captaines and such Inserior Officers as have the Guard for that instant; Many other slighter ceremonics there are which belong to the Serieant-majors of Regiments, but either inclusively or plainely they are contained in some one or other of the heads wee have already argued, and therefore I will conclude mine Epistle with this admonition, that if the Serieant-major be as he is intended, a man Valiant, Learned, Inschwitted, Wise, Expe-

bee directed, then questionlesse here hee shall finde sufficient either to enlarge, or at least to give his knowledge a moderate vnderstanding.

tours, the conference of the state of a second of the control of t

Do de colle de de de de de comp

esta and



#### THE RIGHT HONORABLE GIL-BERT LORD GERRARD of BROMLEY.

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Lieutenant-Colonell of Foot.



T is not much materiall (my Lord) whether I trouble you with many reasons for my writing, fince the whole scope of mine intent is amply enough set foorth in the first Epistle, nor is it greatly necessary that I pleade any ferious excufes, fince the little knowledge I have of your Lordship can expect no more mercie then what proceeds from your owne Iudgement. It sufficeth

me to have a greedinesse of desire to presetue to the last of time a perperuitie of that noble Range wherein G o D and the KING hath plac't you, that howfoeuer Death, Mischance, or Barrainnesse (which ever labours to locke great Names in Oblivion) struggle to make some forgotten, yet to all succeeding ages it shall be knowne that once they were, and Time hath no Sithe to cut downe or confume them. This (my Lord ) may be an Embleme of some love, and that rather craves acceptation then pardon, and the subject it selfe may worke to the bettering of your knowledge, and fure in fuch goodnesse there is no presumption, fo that I must conclude my complement with this Maxime, That Affection is a Present which few noble Spirits have ever despised.

The Office of which I am to argue to your Lordship, is that of the Lientenant Colonell of a Foot Regiment, the Etymologie of whose Name, Foundation, and Invention I will not heere infift on, because I shall have a stronger occasion to discusse it in another Epistle, let it suffice me onely in this place to say that the Lieutenant Colonell of Foot is the

the second Captaine or principall Commaunder ouer a Regiment, and had his beginning or first frame from many necessary occasions; as first in respect that the Colonell himselfe, who is the first Moouer and giver of life to the whole Regiment, having but one Body (how ever by fecondary meanes it causeth motion in many places) yet of it selfe it hath ever but abiding in one place at one time, nor can but with difficultie and trouble discharge divers things in divers places, as also in that the Co lonell is capable of more great places then one, as namely, to be a Colonell, and also one of the Counsell of Warre, that hee may fometimes have especiall dependance vpon the Generall ( when peraduenture his Regiment is remooued and farre distant) as also that hee may be absent, ficke, or hurt, vnder any of which the Armie must in no wife suffer iniury: therefore it is ordained, that every Colonell shall have his Lientenant-Colonell, who in his absence shall with a full and absolute authoritic fway and gouerne the whole Regiment, commaund the Serieant-Maior, and all other inferiour Captaines, and according to the fway of true Equitie and Iustice (observing the Lawes and Ordinances of Marshall proceedings) shall preferue an harmonious concord cleane through-

out the body of his whole commandement.

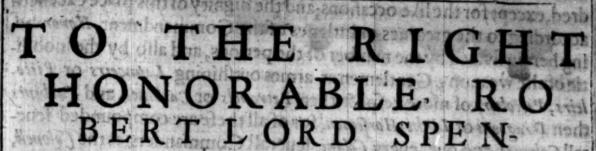
The election of this Lieutenant Colonell ought to be in the Colonel himselfe: for where there is not a mutuall agreement and concord amongst and betweene all the superiour Officers, but either emulation, distrust, or a strugling to tread downe new raised advancement, riseth against one another, there without all question shall neither true discipline be pursued, nor yet prosperitie busie to attend any part of their actions: but yet notwithstanding it many times falles out that the Generall preserveth to himselfe the election of these Officers, and either by the covenant of power, or the consent of the Colonel establisheth such as he thinketh to be most meet for these places: but howsoever or whosoever maketh the election, it is meet it bee done with great confideration and judgement, and that every man should be ranged according to his desert and merit, and that neither Affection, Oftentation, nor Garments should carry away these eminent places, but that as men chuse Wines by their strengths and goodnesse, so they should elect these by their vertues and noble indeauours, placing them there where no particular enuy should shake them, and weighing them in so true and even a Balance, that no subtill ierke either of a couetous hand, or blind love, may make that feem heavy which indeed is but light ayre, or of lesse substance, so shall the King bee well scrued, the kingdom better preserved, and honest men the best of all pleafed: then vpon every accident of death, or change of advancement, men should not like virginall lacks be skipping up here and there, and in every corner, but take a modest, due, & lawfull remooue after the Schoolemens rule, who euer did couple Antiquitie and Defert with Preferment, and not mens seduced opinions, yet with this one generall exception, that it any man by an extraordinary valour (testified in some noble and heroicall exploit) should merit farre beyond the compasse of other mens deferuings,

feruings, that then it might bee lawfull for fuch a manto aspire without enuy, and either to passe cheeke by ioll, or precede his forerunners; as al fo if any man through his extraordinary Wilddome, Judgement, and experience by his laborious study or painfull endeavors, should better enable himselfeifor the discharge of some places then others of his ranke, it were thuffice not to let him goe before them; for both the whole body of the Army by (fuch a structuesse) might want the vie of a notable member, and the loffe of encouragement, by omitting fo worthy an example might breed a dulnesse in other excellent spirits to desist from the like perfection, when they faw there was no Gatland preferred for them. but that which was of the lowest and meanest condition, And as thus the extraordinary deferver should take large and wide strides, so on the contrary part, men that are flaues to Sloth, Cowardife, Ignorance, and Bafes neffe, they should have manakled hands and fettred feet that they might neither reach nor ouertake Vertue, but at the pleasures of their Chiefe. taines be changed, removed, or loft from remembrance if sind it sid T

For the particular dutie of this great Officer, it will appeare more fully in the discussion of the Office of the Colonell himselfe, in as much as whatfoeuer doth belong to him, doth in his absence appertaine to his Lieutenant, and he shall with as great care and ample authoritic looke to the healthfull estate of the whole Regiment as the Colorel himselfe, give directions to his Sericant-maior, see performed all comandements which shall come from the Generall, or the Lord-marshall, & at no time be absent from any Court of Warre, or other serious consultation: hee shall see that all the Captaines doe faithfully obey the Colonell, the inferiour Officers, the Captaines, and the common Souldiers, all that have any shadow of commandement. He is to examine all controuerfies what focuer which shall arise betweene Souldiers and their Officers, or Officers and their Captaines; and if the Colonell be absent, he shall not onely heare, but determine them (vnlesse they appeare Capitall, and then he shall referre them to a Marshall court) but if the Colonell be present, then he shall deliuer him a true relation thereof, and according to his directions (and taking the affiftance of those Captaines which are not in question) proceed to a censure.

The Lieutenant-Colonell shall bee a faithfull Aduocate in all causes betweene the Colonell and his Captaines, for all manner of accommodations and provisions, whether it bee neglect of Pay, Pronant, or other necessaries, and to that end shall goe to the greater Commanders (in whose power it is) for a speedy redresse of whatsoever shall molest them, he shall be conversant and familiar not onely with all the Captaines, Lieutenants, and Ensignes within his Regiment, but also with all the Serieants, and lower Officers, most Gentlemen of Companies, and the greatest part of the best reputed and most experienced Souldiers, being able to call most of them by their names and surnames: for believe it, in the pinch and extremitie of sharpe warre, this sweetnesse of a particular knowledge, will work infinitly in mens minds, and make them both stand, when feare

148



SEROF WORME Promot which generall count or holf all in eder of mand, by he figures a Limiter on England, this he co

# THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Liuetenant-Colonell of Horse.

Was neuer (my Lord) more desirous to gather a generall knowledge, then willing to Impart it for agenerall Benefit; wherein howfocuer I may feeme like an empty vessell (amongst many full ones) to found the lowdest vpon the slightest knocking, yet it is a pardonable fault, in as much as I hurt no man but my felfe, vttering that treasure which I should lay vp, & giving away in a moment all I have beene

gathering in the whole course of mylife. Be it then as the world shal cenfure & ler the full handed man be still most sparing: for mine part I shaleuer hold this proposition, that in seeking to doe lesse good to my selfe, that I may doe more to my weake neighbours, I shall neither offend the deuine Maiestie (whose glory I would advance in all my labors) nor tyer your Lordshippe to whom (in this Epistle I couetto giue Satisfaction.

That point of place vpon which I am to touch in this discourse is the Office of the Linetenant Colonell of a Horse-Regiment, who(as I said in a tormer Epistle) rouching his ellection, vertuous disposition, and all civill gouerments withinorconcerning his Regiment, differeth in no point from that of the Linetenant Colonell of a Foote Regiment, being euer the fecond Capraine and having the fecond commandment over the whole Regiment; Acting either in person or by commandment whatsoever hee shall be appointed vnto by his Colonell; But if the Colonell bee absent, then he hath the first and principall anthoritic in the Regiment carrying not only his person but voice in enery direction.

For the composition of a Colony of Horle; It consistes is metimes of three

three Companies or Troopes of Horfe, fometimes of foure, but seldome of five, except it be in case of great favor or especiall advancement, and these Companies or Troops are for the most part not about one hundred men apeece, sometimes one hundred and fifty, seldome two hundred, except for the like occasions; and the dignity of this place excelleth according to the greatnes or littlenes of the Commandment, Honor being herein swaied by the number of the persons, and also by the nobilltie of the weapon; Gentlemen at armes outshining Launceirs or Pisto. leirs, Pistoleirs of more respect then Petronels or Carbines, and Carbines then Dragoons or Light-Horsemen, for of all these are compounded scuerall Colonies, and ouer every Colonie severall Commanders, as the Colonell the Linetenant-Colonell, the Serieant-Maior a Quarter-Mafter and a Prouoft, which generall command is answered in every perticular Command, by a Captaine, a Liuetenant, an Ensigne; if it be to Gentlemen at Armes, a Cornet, if it be to Lauuciers, and a Guydon if it be to Dragoones or Light-Hersemen, two or more Corporalls and a Harbenger, with Inferiors not worthy any especiall note or mention in this Treatise.

The perticular duties which (aboue others) doe most concerne this Officer are first to looke that the whole Regiment bee well armed according to the nature and qualitie of the Colony, as if they be of the two better forts which are to encounter Horse against Horse or Horse against Pike; then to be compleat and full armed (as hath beene before declared) or else if they be of the two inferior forts which are to discouer, to spoyle Forragers, to Watch, to Ward, to Scout, to serue for great Canalgadas or Ambuscados and to Skirmish, then to bee light Armed and most nimbly mounted (according to a former instruction,) and if to both these and the former be allowed (for every two men) a light boy mounted on a small Hackney to attend them, it will not only bring a benefit to the Colony but also make the service to be better performed, and where the Livetenant Colonell sinderh any defect in these armings hee is out of his owne perticuler authoritie to see there bee a speedy Retormation.

It is his Office to see that his Colonels Regiment doe not at any time lose the true dignity of their places, but in as much as it is a Rulein Armos that in all marches the Generalls Regiment shall ever have the Vant-guard, and the rest alternately by turnes, that is to say, he that this day hath the Vauntguard the next day shall have the Reare; hee shall therefore carefully looke to those changes and when his Colonels turne commeth; hee shall challenge the same and not suffer any man to step in betweene him and his Honor; and likewise in what place of the Armie so ever his Regiment doth march; he shall observe that the Colonels companie continually doe take their place upon the lest wing of his owne Regiment; also he shall see (that in true Marshalling of the Regiment) the Colonels, Cornet or Guiddon doe march ever upon the head, the Livetenant Colonels and the Serieant-Maiors Cornets one Ranke behind the Colonels, and the Inferior Captaines, one Ranke behinde the Livetenant Colonels, and the Inferior Captaines, one Ranke behind the Colonels, and the Inferior Captaines, one Ranke behind the Colonels.

tenant

tenant Colonels and the Sericant-Maiors. Alfo he shall have a speciall respect to the marching of every Officer, and that they keepe their due places in due forme (that is to fay) that the Captaine and the other Officers doe each of them march vpon the head of his owne Squadron, the Linetenant only excepted who shall march in the Rease accompaned with the Quarter-Mafter, and the eldeft Corporall fall march voon the head of the Linetenants Squadron, for it is the princledge of his place and a due which he may require in all Armies. Againe the Livetenant Colonell shall tooke to the orderly seperation and deniding of all his Regiment, feeing them cast into Rankes and Files according to true marshall discipline, providing that the Files be never about five men deepe; for it is impossible to bring in depth more hands to fight ar one instant; he fhallallo fee that when they march in Battalia then they shocke close together and as it were joyne Cush to Cush; But if it be to performe any Euclution or alteration of figure whether of greater or leffer quantitie, then he shall see that they observe at least fixe foote distance (which is supposed to be a full Horse length) betweene one horseman and another; laftly when Regiments come to be drawn together and joyned one with another in their feuerall Battalias, then shal the Linetenant Colonel fee that there be a double distance held (which is fine and twenty Foote) betweene every severall company in his Regiment, and a double, double distance (which is fiftie Foote) betweeene his Regiment and any other, fo that in all motions on Horsebacke there is only to bee observed but these source certaine distances, the first close (as Cush to Cush) the second open (which is sixe soote) the third Double-Distance (which is five and twenty foote) and the last Double, Double Distance (which is fifty foote) & of these but two of them are to be vsed in discipline, as ether in service vpon the face of the enemie, or in drilling and exercifing the Troops to make them perfect for feruice,& those are the first two, Close and Open, wherein the Linetenant Colonell is to observe that when at any time he causeth the Squadrons to open entierly, that then he must first open the Rankes and after the Files, and in closing of the Battalia, he must first close Files and then Rankes, and in both these he must vse only but the two first Distances, as if he close Files it must be Close, that is Cush to Cush, leaving no streete at all, & if he open Files there must euerbe fixe foote distance betweene one File & another; so likewise in Rankes, if hee close them it must be to the Horse buttocke without leaving any streete at all, and if hee open them it must bee fixe foote betweene the buttocke of the former horse and the head of his follower; also in marches the Rankes must neuer open aboue fixe foote neither in any other Motion whatfoeuer. Now that the Troops may march orderly and keepe their true distances in a direct and Souldierlike manner; He shall observe that wheresoever his Regiment mooueth, that then all moue together in one Instant and assoone as the head or Vanguard beginneth, that in the same time the Reare bee ready to follow, so shall they still keepe their proportion Iust, neither shallany error be be found in their proceedings. No lesse necessary then these Rules already declared, are the words of Command by which every Troope or Regiment is governed and directed, and therefore it is the Livetenant Colonels charge to provide that not any Captaine in his Regiment vse any frivolous, or new words of his owne Invention, but only such as shall be generally received through the whole Armie, for an vnknowne language is such a Babilonian consustion in the eares of an ignorant Souldier, that nothing but amazement and error accompany such speeches; Therefore the words which are continually in vseare to be commended to every Officers memory, which because they differ in nothing from those which command the foote, I will therefore referre you to that former Epistle in which all the generall words of directions are at large declared.

For all other perticularities which, shall necessarily depend vpon this great Officers duty, you must have patience to behold them in the Office of the Colonell himselfe; to whom since hee is the Imediate second and chiefe Substitute, it is therefore to be imagined that whatsoever the Colonell is liable to performe, that (in his absence) the Livetenant Colonel must see effected after the best and most respective manner that may be, for any remissesse or slacknes in him carrieth with it a double Iniurie; one to himselfe and another to his Colonels reputation, and in the warres every small omission is dangerous, for a man ought not to erre twice. I could wander infinitly in this maze and make one occasion beget another, but I should then both breake promise with your Lordship and my selfe, and instead of an Epistle send you a troublesome paper, but I will be faithfull to my first purpose, and only knit vp mine Epistle with

in the Bounds already prescribed, howsoeuer a greater debt may bee challenged, yet without doubt little more can well be proued.

Make the control

TO



# Offering Ton H Epitel Rid Louis of the Tone HONORABLE, WIL-LIAM FINES LORD

Officers by whole still and conduct he government and thin of eth of

#### THE ARGVENT TO THE ARGVENT OF THE PROPERTY OF

Of the foure Corporals of the Field.

He weakest knowledge (my Lord) that one man can get of another, is that of the Eye, for it is shallow, and can finke no deeper then the vtmoft skin, vncertaine and apt to change with every infirmitie, and imperfect being swayed by the violence and furie of paffion, the Eare is a much better Intelligencer, and doth more truely declare our minds to others. and others to our felues: fo that being the princi-

pall Sence both of Instruction and Friendship, wee ought in all our defignes to labour for its greatest satisfaction. I am (my Lord) a stranger to your Eye, with your Eare I would faine Infinuate, and though I can bring you but a plaine and dull found, yet questionlesse (if you please to examine the notes aright) how ever you find little Muficke, yet you shall relish a great deale of concord, of which the latter is more sweet, though the other be more cunning: but what soeuer it be, yours it must now be, for fo my vow hath made it, so doth the Range and Ranke of your noble place commaund it. 12 10 Albit better

The next great Officers preceding the former, and vpon whose Range I am in this place hapned, are the Foure Corporals of the Field, who have their dependance only vpon the Serieant-maior, and are called his Coadintors, or Affiftants, being (according to the manner & custome of our late moderne warres in number but foure and no more, who for their election ought to bee Gentlemen of great Dexteritie, Knowledge, and Judgement, such as have at least been Captaines in other times, and for their preferments are advanced to these places, wherein they have no particular commands of any particular Companies, which doe peculiarly belong

long to themselues, but have a generall charge and care of the whole Army: they ought to bee men of great respect and estimation, having gotten that authoritie of Trust and Beliefe amongst the common Soul. diers, through the prosperity of their affaires, that what soener they command or direct, may bee performed with a kind of religious seueritie, as matters of high worth and importance; for in an Army there cannot be a greater blemish, then when these men shall come within the compasse of contempt or misdoubting. Besides, if these noble parts should be abfent which are required in men of this high place and qualitie, the diffepute not only feazeth vpon them, but vpon the Serieant-major also, where it commeth, that although the Generall himselfe doth many times take vpon him the nomination and election of these Officers, yet particularly they doe belong only to the Serieant-maior: for as the whole Army is to him but one entire and full Company, so are these Corporals his inferiour Officers, by whose skill and conduct he gouerneth and disposeth of the whole Bodie.

Touching the particular duties belonging to their place, they are continually in all occasions of Action to accompany and attend upon the Serieant-maior, who being a man of infinit imployment, as having a body that must be almost in all places, and that at one instant, and a voyce which like thunder, must bee heard neere, farre off, and indeed through euery corner; yet for as much as his materiall body cannot be to transported, therefore he hath these foure Gentlemen his Coadiutors or Substitutes, who being dispersed at the foure corners of the Army, doe (as the foure winds ouer the world) carry and conuay his directions ouer all the Army; which that it may be done with more fulnesse of perfection, the Serieant maior shall with these foure Corporals of the field from time to time continually confult & communicat both his proper Authoritie, and also the greatnesse of his affaires, and making them as his especiall Counfellors, by whose experience and skill all his endeauors are to be affilted: neither shall he alone doe them this particular honor in himselfe, but also make all Captaines and inferior Officers in the Army both to hold their persons in reuerence, and also to persorme their commaundements with care, respect, and diligence.

These Corporals of the field then (being knowne Officers of this eminence in the fild) are to carry the directions of the Serieant-major overall the Army, and whether it march, stand still, or fight, they are to passe from place to place, and see performed what soever shall proceed either from him or the Lord Marshall, sometimes bringing vp Regiments, and ioyning them into greater bodies, sometimes deviding and lessening them into smaller parts, sometimes sorting and drawing one weapon from another, disposing the Pikes one way, and the Shot another, sometimes culling out speciall Bands for speciall purposes, either for Wings, Forlornes, or else to entertaine or relieue Skirmishes, and sometimes disposing of Guards for the safetie of the Munition and Baggage; all which as they are to performe them onely by directions, and not the authority of their

owne

owne judgements, so likewise they shal doe them speedily, faithfully, and valiantly. And as thus they are voon the dayes of battell (or when any necessary preparation is to be made) continuall drummes in the cares of the Foot-companies: fo vpon commandement (likewife) they must bee shrill Trumpers to found to the Horse-troups also, drawing them either one way or other, according as they shall be commanded, whether it bee in framing any great Body or battel, or in separating Regiments, sending fome to guard the great Ordnance, some to answere the enemies Horsemen, some to charge vpon the Pikes, and some to scowre off & on round about the field, to spie all advantages, and see in what part the enemy is most weakened. And that all these things may be done almost as soone as spoken, it is meet that all these foure Corporals of the Field bee exceeding well mounted of most nimble, swift, tough, and well winded horses, by the affiftance of which, in a trice they may paffe from one place to another, seeing euery one of their comandments put in execution before they passe to another direction: and hecrein is to be observed that these foure Corporals are to bee obeyed in all their commandements with as great feruency and respect as any other superior Officer whatsoeuer: for indeed they are no other then their voices, nay sometimes the voyce of the Generall or the King himselfe. end will not not bugge 2 157

These Corporals have the raunging of Battels, and the shaping or proportioning of the figure according to the Serieant-maiors demonstration, distributing themselves (as it shal please the Serieant-maior, or Lord Marshall to appoint) to fundry weapons, one bringing up Pikes, another Shot, a third the great Ordnance, and the fourth the Pioners or Myners : one shall send the Men at Armes one way, another shall fend the Pistoliers another way, a third shall give directions to the Carbines, and a fourth shall place the Dragoones where their service may be most convenient. Thus shall every man have his hands full, the enemy continually bee affailed and offended, and Order at no time either shooke or broken. Neither shall these Officers alone (in the action and heat of Battell) have only regard to the managing and disposing of their owne Troups & Bands, but also shall keepe a vigilant eye vpon the orders and disorders of the enemies Battels; and vpon Information thereof vnto the Serieant-maior (and receiving new Instructions) with all Valour, Readinesse, and skill to alter and frame his owne Bands anew, in such wife as may best answere those aduantages which they have already taken: neither in these actions and alterations shall they performe them with a silence or dumbnesse (as if they were afraid to awaken the Souldier nor yet with fuch an hastines or rashnes, as if the losse of a minute were the losse of the whole Army, nor yet expressing feare in their amazement, or tyranny in the crueltic of their Language: they shall not drive men before them like herds with shouts and blowes, neither shall they let them behold more sharpnesse in their frownes, then can bee on their enemies swords, but enery action which proceedeth from them, shall be accompanied with honorable and couragious words, whereby the Souldier may ftill be more and more inflamed X 2

flamed with the loue of danger and vertue. It is also a part of their office, that if any Captaines, Officers of Foot-bands, or other foot Souldiers, to whom for some respects of sickness or infirmitie, may be (by their Superiours) Hackneys allowed to ride vpon, that yet not with standing all such (when they come within one mile of their allodgement) shall by the appointment of the source Corporals of the field alight from their horses, and put themselves into their due and proper places, and so march to the place of encamping, which it is presupposed the Serieant-maior and these source Corporals of the field with other Officers hath already viewed and made convenient for their entertainment; neither being arived at the place of encampment, shall any Company offer to lodge or disband it selfe, till they have received licence and directions so to doe from one of the foure Corporals of the field.

Many other by-authorities are transferred vpon these Officers, as distribution of victuals taken from the enemy, prouision of fewell, lights, and other necessaries belonging to the night watchings, and indeed almost any thing which hath a generall dependance on the whole Armie before the face of the enemy; yet in as much as they are rather intruded and thrust vpou them by greater authoritie then rightly to be challenged, I will not here daigne a recapitulation of the same, but finish

vp mine Epistle with this assurance, that who soeuer shall
performe faithfully what hath already been declared, need not feare the debt of any
greater dutie which can be
demanded.

Compression of the section of the se

Adapting the second of the sec

Compare the second of the seco

ing the desire the factors and the state of the state of

estimaca de de la caración de la companya del companya de la companya de la companya del companya de la company

Microsopherman in the P. C. Tillians

TO



# TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE ED-WARDLORD DENNY

THE ARGVMENT.

Of the Counsell of Warre.

T is (my Lord) God which hath called you to Honor, and it is that Honor which enforceth me vnto
this dedication; to omit any, were to breake a linke
in that golden Chaine which with all my skill I
studie to pollish; and to adde any other besides your
selves, were to put disagreeing Mettals together,
which not fixing according to Art, would shame
both me and my labors; pardon me therfore though

I be bould in this short Epistle to call vpon your noble name, you see the motiues which instame me and the Subject which I couet to advance, to the first I would bring eternity, to the latter loue; and to both an immortall lodging within the house of Memory. The world speakes you noble and I am bound to believe her, yet if you shall please to expresse your selfe further in the protection of this poore labor, you shall tie me in two Bonds more, the one of Service the other of Admiration.

It is certaine (my good Lord) that as no great matter (of what nature or kind foeuer it confist) can be well effected or brought to passe, without a serious deliberation and graue aduise, painefully exposulated amongst men of sound and approued sudgements, so about all other marshall men (which have the command and charge of great Armies) ought still to be accomodated with men of infinite Skill, Wisdomeand Vertue, who communicating amongst them their affaires, and disputing the reasons and occasions of every occurrent, may (as from noble Oracles receive an happie discussion of all the doubts and hazards whatsoever, and the rather since the manage of their designes dependent vpon so great and waighty a consequence as mens lives, Estates, and Fortunes, the re-uolution of Kingdomes, the destruction of Lawes both Divine and Ciuill,

uill, and many times the vtter Ruine and subversion of all Piety and Religion; any or all which are brought as wealthy prizes and laid down at the stake to be wonne and lost vponeuery chance of Fortune; hence it comes that it is thought convenient a Generall of the wars (above many other Princes) should be carefully armed with a sound, Wise and Religious Councell; First to prove the action of his vnderstanding to be lawfull, Iust and agreeing both with divine and humaine Vertue; next that he may be furnished with all the Nerues, Health and Strength of the Warres, as Money, Munition, Victuall, Able men and Forraigne Consederates; and lastly that he may have an easie, frequent & safe passage therevnto, both for the transportation and reliefe of Seconds, as also for the necessitie of a suer and quiet Rendeuous when any crosse mischance shall

checke or feeme to thwart the successe of his proceedings.

When therefore a Generall is ingaged in these great Businesses of the Warres, and hath for the happy ruling of his affaires appointed all his Superior Officers, he is then out the whole and entier number to select an especiall company of the most Religious, Stoutest and Wisest mento be of his Councell; wherein although in some Campes there be some particuler men, which by the dignities of their place and Office doe challenge a priviledge to be of his Counfell, as namely all Colonels and their equals, yet it is to be vnderstood, that from hence hath growne a difstinguishment of Counsels and according to the variation of Marshall Courts, so they have altered both in eminence and application; some being generall as in the triall and judging of criminall offendors, and to this all Captaines enrouled within the Generals Lift may freely and by their owne right be admitted; others are more especiall, as where the debatement of provisions, the raising of Taxes, and the ordering of the publique affaires of the Campe are handled, and to the seall Colonels and Officers within their range are admitted, and doe confult and conclude with the Generall for all the prosperities and benefits which doe appertaine vnto the Armie; but the last Counsell of all is a great deale more priuate, and the matters which are handled therein are of that consequence for fecrefie and effect, that it were vnfit and not allowable so many should be drawne thereunto, or that all forts of men should pertake of every State negotiation, or those powerfull stratagems which indeed should lodge in the strongest and safest Bosomes, for norwithstanding men of great experience and valor, or men of high Birth and Ranke, may in a shortspace of timeasscend to command a Colonels place in the Field, yet may Learning, Judgement, Secresie and divers other vertues (without which a Preuie Counseller cannot subsist ) be so farre remoued and distant from his nature, that it were a sinne against Sasetie to admit such trust to his Bosome; so on the other side men of meaner and lower advancement, who are not capable of those high places in the Armies, may yet be much apter to aduice and have a better and stronger Fort wherein to keepe secrets from perishing, then those of an higher calling, and therefore (not without good warrant) are many times chosen; and admitted

to this noble place of Trust and preferment. But in consideration that the Armie confisteth of so many severall great Commanders; their is no likelihood but in so frequent and plentifull a choice a man may finde enow to supply this Roome withour disparagment, wrong or exception; neither neede it be intended that any fuch shall be without an eminent place, fince men of Godly, vertuous and experienced vnderstandings, who are True, Secret, Liberall and of Free mindes are eueraptelt for the best places of what nature soener. Thus Alexander tooke Parmenio, Clyeus and all the oldest of his Father Phillips Commanders to aduife and strengthen him in all his warlike occasions; thus Cafar held Care that by his aduise he might ruine Pompey; thus Anthony prevailed during the life of Publicola; & thus Augustus held himselfe fortunate in the counsels of Dollobella; but what neede I stand on these forraigne Instances, wee fee enow to point at within our owne remembrance, did not Philip the second of Spaine give to Don John Duke of Austria, that brave Souldier Don Lewis de Zuniga to counsell him in all Marshall occasions : and did not our Edward the third doe the like for his Sonne the Blacke Prince, when hee chose for his Councellors the Earles of Warwicke, Suffolke, Salisburie and Oxford by the strength of whose advice in the Battle of Poyteirs, he not only ouerthrew all the flowers of France, but also tooke John their King and Philip his sonne Prisoners; Infinite are the Examples to proue the necessitie and excellencie of a grave and aduised Conncell; and as aboundant the Roords of their perishing who despising Councell haue runne rashly and headlong on, guided by nothing but their owne opinions, for so did Crasus when he brought himselfe & eleauen Legions to be facrifised in Parthia, thus did Tiberius Gracebus when he had his braines dasht out in the Capitoll; and thus did Cains Gracebus who was made a bloody facrifice on the top of mount Auentine for the much aduised tempting of his fortune.

To conclude this point then there is nothing more necessary then a sufficent Councell of Warre; for they are more availeable in Marshall Discipline then either Armor or weapons, & more brave exploits have been acheived by wisdome and policie then ever could be brought vn-

der by violence and darring.

To speake then generally of this especiall and private Councell of Warre, and who in common Intendement are (according to the general custome of Nations) supposed meetest to succeed and Rise vnto the same; they are these especials Officers following, who by vertue of their first places are evercapable of this second: because none of lesse merit and desert, may or ought to assume vnto the sway and command of the sirst dignity. Of these Privy Counsellors the Luentenant Generals of the Horse hath the sirst place; the Lord Marshall hath the second; the Master of the Ordnance the third; the Treasurer of the Warres the sourth, and the Master de Campo who is the eldest Colonell in the Field) the sist: but if the number of Councellors arise to any greater extent, then they are chosen out of other great personages of eminence and worth at the discretion

cresson of the Generall; as for the Colonels of the Infantrie they are (as before I said) of a Counsell extrauagant concerning mater do mestique, but for such as are either forraigne or private, they have no medling at all; This privie Counsell of Warre are to deale in matters that are profound, dangerous, and difficult, and are to argue and dispute them with sound vinderstandings and cleare judgements, whence it comes that men of meane capassites & vinder valued Thoughts are excluded from these aproaches; and none lycenced to ascend thereunto; but such as have high spirits, vinestrained thoughts and Princely cogitations, which vertues in what Cabinet soeuer they be sound, though the outside be never so plaine and simple, yet is the lewell so rare and precious, that Kings distaine not to weare them;

neither ought men to faile in bestowing of them their due Praise and Reuerence.

The end of the fourth Decad.

TO

who is a manufacture of the second of the se



## THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE, CHARLES LORD

STANHOP OF HARINGTON.

#### THE ARGUMENT. Of the Colonell of Foot.



Rauell(my Lord) as a famous Divine of our Church affirmes, perfecteth Wisdome, and Observation is the perfection of Travell, either of which when they are neglected or despised, a man may returne home to his Countrey like a stall-fed oxe to the Market, with a thicke ribbe, but a leane forehead, and how euer his body may bee couered with fat and faire clothing, yet will his mind bee emptie, thinne, and

naked. That I may not bee guiltie of this carelefnesse, I have in this Epistle presumed to call your Lordship to bee a witnesse of some part of my Observations, wherein if breuitie make mee appeare more sleight then the gravitie of the Subject would require, my hope is you will bee pleased to conceiue that it is onely an Epistle, no serious discourse, to which I stand engaged.

The matter at which my Penne in this place arriveth, is the Office of the Colonell of a Foot Regiment, who amongst the old Romans was called the Tribune, or Ruler of the common people, and commanded a Terrio, or Regiment: the name colonell is but moderne and new, and little longer then fince the dayes of Charles the fift, Frantis the French King, and our Henriethe eight of England, who called those colonels whom the old Spaniards called Maistres de campo, and were such as had the commandement of two, three, or more Captaines under them, yet in the first times it was not fo, but these whom we call Colonels were then called Dux or Duces, which fignisfieth Leaders or Directors, and of these amongst the Romans there were three severall kindes, as first Duces Militarcs, Armies, and were ordinarily those which continually marched with the Armies, and had the charge of one thousand men; the second Duces Proninciales, who commanded all the Souldiers within one prouince, and the third were Duces Limitanei, who had the commaundement of all those Souldiers, who lived upon the Marches or Frontiers of Countries bordering upon the enemy, and were to withstand all maner of assaults and forraine Incursions.

For the Regiment or full number of men which every Colonell should command, they are exceeding divers and vncertaine, at no time holding any iust rule or quantitie: for they sometimes containe five hundred men, sometimes a thousand, now fifteene hundred, then two thousand, nay, three, soure, and sometimes five thousand, and to these numbers of Foot have also bene added some Horse, but the President is not vsuall: and for mine owne part as I said in a sormer Epistle, I hold it best agreeing with good discipline, that no Regiment should exceed the number of one thousand, and those devided into five Companies, and every

Company to containe two hundred.

For the election of this Colonell of the Infantery, or Foot-companies, he is principally to be chosen by the King and Prince himselfe, and not by the Generall, without some especiall Commission, as also by the assistance of the Counsell of Warre, and some other deliberation. This Officer ought to be a man of wonderfull experience and knowledge in the Warres, and one so farre transcending all others which are of any Ranke below him, that as a Pharohs Tower, he should be a Lanthorne to guide every wandring Souldier to the perfection of his duty may so great an extent he hath for the vse of his vertue, that being alone with his Regiment in any place removed from the rest of the Armie, hee ought to have all the perfections of Authoritie, Prudence, and Valour, which belong even vnto the Generall himselfe, for his power is as absolute, and his command reacheth to as large and spatious limits.

For the particular parts of his office, he is first of all the absolute Commander & director of al the Captaines & other Officers which are within his Regiment, & doth at his wil & pleasure dispose them whether it be in quiet garrison, in the field, or in the face of the enemy; and as they are thus to be obedient to him, so is he likewise to obey all the hests & commaundements of the Lord Generall, and to doe all his appointments, of what nature focuer, as whether he be commanded to the Siege, Battery, or Assault of any Citie, Fort, or Castle, whether to defend townes, trenches, and ditches, or otherwise to encounter the enemy hand to hand, vpon the Champaines or places of much lesse aduauntage, whether it be to giue Battell, to make Incursions, to Retire, to carrie and conuey Bridges, to guard the Ordnance, or to performe any other warlike evolution, all must bee performed by him with that chearefulnesse and alacririe of spirit, that hee may appeare rather to flye to thole encounters, then by calling doubts into his confideration, to stand a mazedly fearefull like one that were drawing the picture of cowardife

without the Copie more then his owner maginationed and midbluo?

The Colonell in times past hath had the power to election at least to nominate all his owne Captaines, but fince to hath been affirmed and taken from him by the power of the Generalliforthat now though he command all in his Regiment, yet he electeth none but his owne Lieurenant (who in curtofie hath the title of a Capraint and in all inceeings may take his place as the punic Captaine of that Regiment his Enfighe, his Serieants and the other inferior Officers of his owne Band. This Company belonging to the Colonell, shall take precedencie of place before all other Captaines of the Regiment, and his Colours shall ave at least a ranke of two before any other. Now that hee may the better know how to rele and gouerne all the Officers within his Regiment it is deceffary, that hee endeauour himfelfo to learne all that belongs to every mans particular durie, even from the Lawypefado to the Office of the Serieant-major, and to fee that every dutie bee fuffly and Souldier-like fure the Bitternefle thall neuer performed.

The Colonell ought to have his Company compounded of some certaine number of men more skilfull and better experienc't then any of the rest, with whom as well as with the Captaines, he ought to consult, and take aduise in every doubtfull businesse: for it hath beene found many times by experience, that the private Souldier who hath served in the Warres both a Prentice and a Iourney-man, will yeeld more sollide and substantiall reasons for any vndertaking, then many more glorious outsides, whose traffique with the Warres hath been more pleasant and easie: and therefore these plaine (but well-vnderstanding) men shall have their payes and meanes advanced above the rate of other men, that those which behold it may see, that vertue wheresoever

the lodgeth, will still be found out and rewarded.

The Colonell is to prouide that all Martiall discipline bee duely obserued, that the Guards and Watches be augmented or diminished, according as occasion shall administer, that the Lieutenant Colonell and the Serieant-major receive their directions in a due and convenient time, and that in the administration of Iustice hee carry an vpright and even Ballance, neither swaruing to one hand nor the other, but governing all things with such wisedome and discretion, that the Souldiers may both love and search him, the Captaines grow proud to become his Imitators, and the General himselfe rest indebted to him for the benefit of his good

and commendable examples.

In this Colonels power is the punishment of all forts of offences, euen to the vttermost of life and death; it is hee that may both make and repeale Lawes and Edicts at his pleasure, and hee is the civill Iudge in all causes and controversies, whether it touch honour, person, goods, or private diffention; it is he that must provide Victuals, Money, and Apparell for his Souldiers; and when any slacknesse is found in other superior Officers, it is hee that must appeale to the Generall, and seeke reformation. No Captaine within his Regiment ought to entertaine any new Y 2

excelled in the district and worthings of the weapon which

## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE GEORGE CAREW LORD OF CLOP-

nance, and of his Maiesties Ordnance, and of his Maiesties most honourable Privie-Councell.

common wealth and wholstome gonernment of his Regiment, in

# 

# Of the Colonell of Horse.

Herefore (my noble Lord) serves the tongue of the Learned, if not to speake words in a fit and convenient Season; and what should a pen doe in the hand of Experience, if Nigard like he will not vouch fafe to spare vs any of his Beneficiall observations; for mine owne part if either of these would have risen vp in our Theater, I would have thought my selfe happy to have firten a dumbe (but admiring) Audi-

tor; yet to the first which is Learning (whom I ever courted but could never attaine) since I am a Stranger; with the other (which is Experience) I will make bould; for she hath beene my Guide in Travell by Land, my Pilot vpon the Seas, and my Schoole-master in the warres; Sir, I know to whom I write, to a Noble man that is Learned, to a Noble man that is an Experienc't and an approved Souldier: believe me I am not so ambitious to imagine I can send you any thing new, any thing worthy your Studie; no, mine imperfect Offers come to serve you, not to Instruct you, and therefore I beseech you accept them as coole water which may refresh a Thirstie, Weary, and Ignorant Knowledge, not milke to delight and nourish a Knowing Vnderstanding; so shall you give strength to my hopes, and adde to the check-role of your servants another faithfull Observer.

The Office vpon which I pitch in this Epistle, is that of the Colonell of Horse, which is a Noble and Honorable place, and so much the more Noble

Noble as it excelleth in the dignitic and worthines of the weapon which he commandeth; The name bath no larger extent or fignification then the Colonell of the Infantrie, only the dignitic of the person thus far excellent, that of what fort of weapon somethis Colony be communiced, yet in himselfe he is ever a man at Armes, and though his Regiment bee but of Dragones yet sofeth he no Honor either in his place or person; but sitteth amongst the greatest Colonels according to his degree an equall Brother and Companion; only contenting himselfe to be an elder or younger according to his anriquite in command, and the honor of

the weapon by him commanded.

I need not infift much vpon his election fince I have already named the place Noble, which inferreth as great and as fingular vertues as can by any tongue be named, by any pen described, by any heart conceived, neither need I make my way long and tedious in coming vnto the generall parts of his duty, especially so much as concerneth the ordinary common-wealth and wholesome government of his Regiment, in Health, in Concord, in Plenty, and in the performance of true Marshall Discipline, since indeed he is so neare a Kinsman, nay rather Brother or Fellow Companion with the Colonell of the Insarrie, that in observing the first, this latter doth (as it were) dilate and lay it selfe open to the intelligence and apprehension of every indifferent Judgement, yet for as much as the alteration of weapon, and addition of the Horse breedeth a diversitie in some particular duties; therefore to those I will returne and shew how they are to bee mannaged in the designes of warre-like

preparations.

It is a very materiall thing and an especiall duty in every Colonell of Horse to looke that all his Regiment be well mounted and armed according to that proportion of Armes ouer which he is to Gouerne; as if his Regiment confist of Gentlemen at Armes, that then they be compleate armed in good Armor of high proofe from the close Caske downero the Greaue, and at all peeces, a large, straight Launce well headed with steele, an arming Sword, and a Mace or Battle Axe at his Saddle pomell; a couragious, strong and tall stooned Horse, a steele Saddle, and the Horfes head, necke, breft and buttocke barbed with Pettron, Trappings, Crinier and Chieffront, his Bridle double rained, and well lined with a strong wyre chaine, and the head-stall sutable with the like wyre lining also. To every Gentleman at Armes should belong, three, foure or more attendants mounted on Horse backe, though in a lower Ranke, who are to waite vpon their necessaries, and to take charge of their spare Horses, for these men at Armes are all intended to bee men of great Blood and Qualitie, to be the owners of Rich Estates, and such as follow the wars only for Honor and the love of vertue, and put themselves vader command, not so much for Instrution as for orders sake and to leave behind them the benefit of a good example. If his Regiment confift of Pistoleers, he shall seethem armed complear to the Cush; strong Hories or Guelding of the largest size, deep Saddles, broad Trappings, a faire Sword

and a long Pistoll. If his Regiment consist of Carbines, then to have (as hath beene said in a former Epistle) light Curars, a Spanish Morrian, a lest Gauntlet and no more, a faire Sword or Curtleaxe, a strong nimble Guelding, a Morocco Saddle and surniture surable; but if the Regiment be but Dragones, then a Spanish Morian and no other Armor, a light Guelding, a good Sword and a faire Dragone.

When he hath his Regiment thus orderly armed, it is then the dury of the Colonell to looke vnto their March, their place of attendance, and maner of Service, as if they be men at Armes; (who are heavily armed) thentheir Marches must be slow and seldome, as namely, when the Army doth distodge, and not vpon enery sleight occasion. Their place is vpon each fide of the maine Battell, yet in a somewhat removed and farre distance, for in marching too nere the soote bands they may give offence, as being fodainely enforced to charge & then wanting sufficient ground for retraite, they often fall in amongst their owne bands and so compell them to Rout and disorder; their service is two fould, for they must ether encounter with the enemies Men at armes, or elfe breake in amongst the Pikes, and difranke or ouerthrow them; they are also sometimes to relieue the Carbines or Dragoons when they are ingaged, and in retraits to make stands vponthe enemies, and so keepe them from the execution. If they be Piftoliers then their March is more swift and more generall; yet not fo great as to be worthy the name of Tranell; their place is a good pretty distance before the men at Armes, and they troope together in large Squadrons, the Cornet being lodged within three of the first Rankes, and their Service is to breake vpon the Battell of Pikes after they haue beenea little shaken and distrankt by the men at Armes, by volleys of Short, or any other amazement; also they doe sometimes encounter the enemies horse, & doe follow the chase to finish vp the execution. If they bee Carbines, their March is sodaine and vpon most occasions; their place is before the Pistoleirs and the troupe in wings, or fleeues with their Guydon placed in the middeft of the Rankes, as for their Seruice, it is principally against the Foote-short, especially in Champaines where they are vinguarded, either with Hedge, Ditch, Wall, or other place of aduantage. Lastly, if they be Dragoones, their march is for the most part, vpon the swiftest gallop; their place in Scouts, Forragings, and vpon all needfull discoueries; and the effect of their principall Seruice is to defend and make good all passages ouer Rivers, as Foards, Bridges, Mill-dames, and the like, all Strait wayes, Hills, Valleyes, and other places of Retraite, they may vpon occasion alight from their horses and serve on foot, spoyling all Forragers and Pillagers, assayling Troupes in their lodgings, and when they finde themselves drawing into any inconvenience, they may presently mount againe and retyre into their fafety. But if they be so farre engaged that they cannot well come off, then must the armed Pistoleirs come in and assist them; and therefore in this case the Colonell is to foresee that in the composion of his Regiment, the Dragoones be chosen from the ablest, nimblest, and most active

active menthat can be got, being of that dexteritie and quicknes of spirit that they may be able to vault to and from their Horses at pleasure, and to carry their Pieces so close guarded in their lest hands, that in performing of any of these suddaine actions there may be found neither trouble nor hinderance; lasty when they have performed their duties they shall then retyre behind the Pistoliers and there prepare themselves

againe for a new onlet.

It is also a speciall care belonging to this Colonel, to give directions for the daily trayning and teaching of his Regiment, especially if they serue with fire on Horsebacke, for if a man be neuer so good a Horseman and yet but an ill Shot, or if he be never fo good a Shot, and yet but an ill Horseman, there will be such disparity and vntowardnesse in his actions that all his labour will be to little and no purpose; let therefore diligence and practife, good opportunity and good instructions make the Souldier exquisite in what he vndertaketh, and it will bring honor to the Colonell, and benefit to the generall Service. And that the Service may be the more effectually performed, it is requifite that the Colonell haue euer attending vpon his person (as his dayly and houshold servants) an excellent Smith, or Farryer, who shall ever be furnished with Horseshooes, nayles, and drugges, both for inward and outward applycations avery good Sadler, and all things belonging to his occupation, and a skilfull rough Rider, that may tame and reclayme stubborne lades, and instruct the Souldier how, and in what manner to become a resonable Horseman.

Last of all it is the Colonels duty to have a perfect Rolle of all the Bands within his Regiment, as well Officers, as others, seeing them mounted and armed, and then giving allowance to their sufficiency, hee shall give

directions for the disposing of the Troopes.

From him or his Substitute, the Trumpets shall take all commandements; and whensoeuer the Regiment riseth, the Colonels Cornet shall first slie abrord, to which all the rest shall repaire, and from him shall receiue order for their imployment, whether it be to Watch, to Scout, to discouer or else to relieue others: He shall appoint such as shall guard the Lord Marshall, the Forrage-Master and the Victuallers: He shall dispose the manner of all Skirmishes, and so place, his Troupes that one may second the other in such wise: that if any be repulst yet being relieued they may have time to regather themselves into order, and either mainetaine a second onset or retire backe againe into their owne strength; This is the full effect of the Colonels Office that commandeth Horse, and these things (with the rest which belong to the Colonels of Foote) being serionsly observed, his place shall be suffilled with much renowne, and his person adorned with vodying Honor.

off and demonstrate and the state of the sta

months of the man de production of the last the second training

necessarily depends vpon his knowledge, would askentore paper then



# TO O THE MARIE CHAIN AS LORD WAR VALUE COME AND THE COME OF THE CO

of WARDER

gation or multitude of men placed in such an orderly forme, that they may come to fight with with which may make the the whereby every hand

framing of Battalions which fome define to be a congre-

shorted rish of the Serieant Maior Generall woll si dish



He affaires (my Lord) of my poore Fortunes have ever been hindrances to my Studie, so that how so ever I might in my nature affect it, yet still by Furture I have been debarred that happie selicitie, so that your Lordship can expect from me but rude and unpolisht Gatherings, yet such as they are, I tender them freely, boldly: All men speake you Noble, that perswades mee, and you are an owner.

of Willaughbies Blood (of which my poore felfe am also a sharer) and that almost seales wro mee a deed of assurance; and you are the much honoured kinsman of my dearest respected kinsman, worthy Sir Percinal Willoughbie, to whose loue I am so much bound, that I cannot study a better Rent then to doe you service: all these together bring this Epistle vnto you; which (great Sir) I beseech you be pleased to reade; the little I can get, I am no niggard of; nor was I cuer more desirous to gather, then willing to distribute to the good of my Countrey. Many I know (this way) might Alexander like give talents, but they thinke the World not worthy so much; and if the World would imbrace their Mites, it is an almes too poore for rich Reputations: so that hence they are silent, yet still I keepe on my Pilgrimage: you are one of the Saints to whose Altar I am yowed, and though I have bur a poore Root to offer thereon, yet I will lay it downe with as great considence, as if it were a Snowwhite Bull crown d with Garlands, knowing, that nothing makes Gives are but good mens Acceptations.

great, but good mens Acceptations.

This great and renowned Office (of the Serieant-maior Generall) is following the series of t

necessarily depends upon his knowledge, would aske more paper then I have bestowed on all which have gone before him, and therfore (as Geographers doe) I must intreat your Lordship in a little pricketo survey a

great kingdome.

To speake then first of his election, the power thereof commonly remaineth in the Generall, and the care therof ought to be more then of any of the former: for being the generall Minister of an entire Armie, and having his authoritie and vie extending it felfe into all manner of Nerchings, Imbattellings, and Encampings, we need fay no more of his person but this, he should bee a man both inward and outward of a most abso. lute perfection. His place is before all Captaines and Colonels, (except the Colonell Generall) for they receive their directions from him, he from the other; his Actions and Imployments are ever for the most part in the face of the enemy and the greatest vse or necessitie of his person is ever in the places of most certaine danger; It behoueth him to be exceeding Skilfull in the framing of Battalions which some define to be a congregation or multitude of men placed in fuch an orderly forme, that they may come to fight without hindring one another, whereby euery hand being necessarily imployed, they may attaine to the end of their purpose which is glory and conquest; fo that to his charge is left the framing of the proportion, the gouerment in marching and the order in fighting. In his Brayne there ought to be (at least in his bosome or some other convenient place must be) a cattalogue of the just number of the Army, together with the true fortment and division of every weapon; and in his memory he must ever carry ready framed the formes and proportions of fundry Battailes, as quadrats or fquares, the equall or vnequall, Tryangles, diamunds and the like, any of which he is to forte & fashion to the Grounde, according as the necessity of the place requireth, ever regarding to give those Formes the greatest preheminence which are ablestill to bring the most hands to fight at one instant without disorder or trouble, as in the champayne the broade Square is best, the bastard or base square where there is advantage of hedge, diche, water, wood or marrish, and the vnequall and imperfect proportion in Straytes, amongst Hylls and Mountaines or in craggie or rockie places. It is his place to take away all disorder from vnruly and Ignorant souldiers, by letting them vnderstand the constant and true place of every Ensigne; as which shall make vp the first rankes, Square or division, which the second, which the third and so of the rest; wherein although some doe allow a constant rule yet many times it varieth vppon lot and may better be referred to the Serieant-maiors discretion, who is to prouide that not the companies which challenge it by right but the companies which are ever best armed be still put into the vangard, he shall after he hath framed his Battaile of pykes lyne them with shot on eyther side, and not so onely, but he shall also have fundry loose wings of Shott trouping by them, in a pretty distance remore, which shall euer be ready to entertayne any skirmish and keepe the Battayle from disquiet; also he shall seriously prouide for the

fafety of his shot when the enemies horse aboundeth much, by drawing out certaine ranks of pykes proportionable to the loose vaguarded shot vader whose safety (vpon every extremity) they shall retyer and then

againe make good their places till the feruice be finished.

It is the Serieant-major Generals office voon any day of Battayle to goe to the Generall or Colonell Generall and from one of them to take his directions; knowing whether the Generall will have his owne Regiment to have the vant-guard or no, or otherwise the Battayle or reare; which resolved he shall then atend the Lord Marshall to the ellection of the field. In which it behotueth the Serieant-major to be very skilfull in the fituation of the Country and to know the distance of places and the difficulties of every passage with all the severall circumstances which shall depend uppon the same, as well for the guard and safety of his owne, as for the hindrance and anoyance of the enemy fo that althings being affured, he may then cause the Drumme-major to beate a remoue, and all the Captaines being affembled to the place of armes; he shall thence (by the directions of the Lord Marshall) draw forth the Battayle, disposing every Commander into the places which are most convenient, and framing his Maniples and divisions sutable to the passages through which they are to march, yet by no meanes into a leffe then a third or elfe fourth part of the front, and keeping every division iust tenne deepe and neither more nor leffe, and herein he shall have respect, that in drawing vp the Maniples to make an entyre Battayle, the Enfignes may fall into their due places, as namely the Generalls vppon the head, the Lieutenant generall, the Lord Marshall, the Master of the Ordnance, the Treafurer, the Colonell general, and the Serieant-maior Generall one ranke within the Battell, the Colonels of the Infantiue a ranke behinde them, and the Capraines a rank behind them. He shall have an especiall carefor the safe garding of the munition & baggage, placing it either before, behind, or on any fide where the enemy is least suspected, It is at his discretion to make stands (which some call Altoes or Hallts) when and at what time he please; whereby the souldier may be refresht when he is weary with trauell, and it must be done in places fit and commodious for the same, as where there is cleane running water, some shelter, yet a large prospect, so as no fouldier may offer to straggle, but the Officers may both perceive him, & reprehend him. Now that all these duties may be the better performed, this Officer is intended to be euer on Horsebacke, yet not vpon a horse of warte, but rather vpon a comely and nimble Hackney, on which he may ride in amongst the Ranks, & passe from File to File, seeing eucry man to performe his dutie in a carefull and modest manner, and herein is to be observed, that if in his passages to & fro, he doe happen to encounter or meet with the Generall (although on foot) yet shall not the Serieantmajor alight from his Horfe, but keepe his feat, for it is his particular preheminence, neither shall be dismount at any time in the day of battel, for any fuch errour is a cloud betwixt him and glory; for being on foot, he is no more then one man, but mounted on horsebacke, and affifting with directi-Z 2

directions, he supplieth the places of many hundreds; his Armour must be light and nimble, being the same pieces which belong to a Foot-Captaine, and in his right hand he shall beare a Trunchion, with which hee may correct any man that wilfully offendeth, as also with it to seperate vnruly horfes, carriage, or baggage which troubles the Battalions, or to demonstrat and point out to any thing which he commandeth; his ordinary place is neere the person of the Generall, or the Colonell generall: for from them hee must take many instructions: if any Squadrons or maine Bodies be broken, hee is to bring Supplies, and sawder them vp againe : he is called the Guide of the Battel, and therfore to looke that all things fucceed rightly. When the Army is encampt, hee giveth the first directions for the Corps de guards, & charge for the Sentinels; it is he that reacknowledgeth the Quarters, and taking his orders from the Lord Marshall, prouideth for the generall safty of all the Armie, as the Watch, the Ward, the Scout, Guard for the Munition, Entrenchments and the like, of all which I have entreated something in the former Offices.

The Serieaut-major is first to take notice of alarmes of all kinds, and to examine the causes, then to give information to the Generall and Lord

Marshall, and so to proceed according to order.

It is a very landable dutie in the Serieant-maior Generall, if in the day of Battell, he select and appoint a certaine number of Souldiers, who from time to time shall draw forth the hurt, maimed, and slaine parties, which else would trouble the Squadrons, and to conuey them to cure, or other place for other purpose. It is his office to appoint the orders and formes of Camifados and Ambuscados, to direct the place where, the order how, and the manner and forme of Silence: he ought to awaken and stirre vp the Generall to the prouision of all kind of Armes, and is to see the necessitie of enery Regiment supplied. To conclude he must be a generall Father ouer all the Armie, and to prouide the good of the Souldiers, as for his naturall children: he is to heare the complaints of all the inferior Serieant-maiors of Regiments, and to fee that they may have speedy dispatches. This is the greatest substance, and the most materiall parts which depend upon this great Officer, which his owne understanding may amplifie according to the administration of occasions; so that fixing knowledge and vie together, the world will become rich by his help, and others much fortified by his encouragements.

> bet transmissional authority and the the year months of the rail de roce of the doctor and

design of the property of the Canada and the second the grant and the second of th

faction and a state of the stat

Marine and the Contract of the Contract of the Contract of the



## TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE, THOMAS, LORD

which ideal to K N I V ET TOO Fanaled by a facility ESGRICA

THE ARGUMENT.

Of the Colonell Generall.



Anger ever (my good Lord) stands at the doore where Intermedling enters, and hardly shal a man either tarry or returne but some mitcheife still will bee tripping at his heeles, especially when men meddle with great mens bufinefles, which is like the paring of a Lyons claw, where if the least cut procure paine, it is ten to one but the cutter is made guilry of his owne diffruction; I con-

fesse I am ascended into a Subject beyond mine experience, yet on this fide my reading, fo that as it may bee dangerous for me to resolue any thing in them from mine owne Iudgment, yet it shal be thanks worthy in meto write their owne & their equal Authority, Necessities require hazard sometimes, and since it is needfull that I speake something both of this and the other fubiects following, let me not be blamed if modeftly I tempt reprehension; your Lordship is one of the oldest fixed Starres within the Spheare of our Court, to a better experience I cannot flie, vnder a nobler Nature I cannot suffer; be pleased then to reade this poore Briefe, and how euer in low words it treat of high things, yet when the meaning shall be truely expounded, nothing shall bee found but an honest admiration fixt vpon all Heroicall vertue.

The Colonell-generall of-the Infantrie, or as some call him the Linetenant-Generall of the Foote ought to bee a man of noble descent, high place, and great authority both in vertue and prudence, for hee hath a Supreame and especiall commandment over all the Foote Bands which are contained within the whole Armie; and when he is chosen ac cording to defert and merit, he is then presupposed to be a man of Infi-

nite

nite experience and judgement, being the eldest and principallest Souldier in all the armie (which hath not a place of greater precedence) except by some extraodinary merit (which is almost gotten within the Ranke of miracles) he be out gone by some of his latter and much younger Companions; for it is certaine that no Generall can (without the Cloud of much enuy) giue a precedency away from so many worthy and renowned Colonels, but upon rare desert, or in case of some superex-

cellent perfection.

This doubtleffe was the rule of the first World, when men imagined that Honour lay in the hands and not in the Bloud, and when such as had the bestowing of these places (being mearely men without any other addition) could looke no way but forward, that is, to the object on which they had fixed their contentments; or downeward to the meanes wherby they might compaffe their Ambitions, euen then when Honour was fo temporary and mortall, that any Frowne, Thunder or Lightening of Greatnesse could kill, split, and veterly consume it. But in these latter Times, fince Wisdome (maryed to Divinitie) began to build up this goodly Temple of true Honor whose cies are so cleere and truly fet, that the can locke backward to fee what the was, & vpward to finde the cause from whence true glory proceedeth; fince men came to know on whom to depend and whom to thanke, fince Honor came-to gaine the eternitie of an hereditary right and that all tittles and tenures were falle and sophisticate, but such as mearely depended on heaven; fince this (I fay) was knowne and approved, all these great and materiall Offices have had another manner of disposing; and this place of a Colonell-Generall of a Foote Armie hath beene and is many times bestowed vpon younge Princes and Noble men, who invited by the powerfulnesse of their vertues, have betaken themselves vnto the warres, and even at their first entrances have had these places conferred vpon them, as in the occurrents of all estates we may see many present examples, sometimes for a protection and countenance to the cause taken in hand, and an inciting and stirring vp other men, (which have dependance on those great perfons) to aspeedy immitation and following of their courses, and sometimes to gratefie the great deeds and beneficences of their famous progenitors; or else as a Schoole or Accademie wherein Nobilitie being to be brought vp in all the waies of perfection, they have these formes or Rankes of proceedings allowed for their exhaltation, nor is it without good Ground of Reason, for howseever the Office earry in it a great preheminence or supreame authority, yet in the execution thereof there is little expected from the person more then countenance of the place and a noble civill Government, the sway and effect thereof being fully and in all perfection to be discharged by the Serieant-maior generall, the Colonels and the under Officers belonging to their Regiments. So that I inferrealthough this place (for honors fake and the aduancement of a braue deserver) might properly apertaine to an ancient, graue and well descruing Souldier, yet also to give merit to a fresh and faire springing hope

hope, and to keepe the Flowers of true honor in their native fufter, it may with as good right be bestowed upon Princely and Noble personages in whom there is a living hope of many foruse great actions, though at the beginning they be punies in the warres and have nothing but the Theoricke knowledge to commend their fortunes.

To this Colonell-generall, the Serieant Maior of the Armie, all Colonels of Foore, and with them all primate Captaines of Foore and their Inferior Officers most continually bee obedient, for they are (as it were) Linetenants and Subditutes under him, taking at his hands all orders and directions by which to mannage the whole Armie, and therefore it is the Office and duty of the Colonell-generall daily and ar specialt appointed times to call the Serieum-maior and the Colonels of the Poore com panies vato him, and with them as with the best Councellors of chareto confer and reason of all matters appertaining to his place and Office, taking from them that found advice and instruction, which coopling and mixing with his owne noble determinations may make all his directions most found and perfect. And that he may imploy nothing more then his noble countenance and fauour to every warlike proceeding, the See. icam major is pleased to take voon him all bodily labors, and to ride vp and downe the Army with his directions, and to fee all things performed which any way appertaines to his great Place and Office; ranging cuery Battalion (even that of the Linetenant-generall or Colonell-generall of the Foote himselfe) in such marshall order as shall be fit for any warlike imployment, whether it be marching, fighting, incamping, beseigeing, affaulting or retiring, all which paine the Colonell-generall taketh both for a fauor and a debt, and returneth him for requitall all his best fanours and endeuors for the advancement of any ferious occasion which concerneth his person.

This Colonell-generall hath the mannage and government of all publique and private affaires of the whole Army on foote, whether it be in Battle, Campe, Ranging, and disposing of all manner of persons according to his will and pleafure, giving the honor and dignitic of places (in all dangerous seruices) as he thinketh to be most convenient; he sendeth foorth great or small parties for Skirmishes or other publique encounters (as feemeth best liking to himselfe) and grants vnto them reliefes and seconds when he thinkes occasion fir, and what numbers he holdeth best proportionable for the effect of the service; It is in his power to re. gard and prouide for all the necessary and fit accomodations which belong vnto the Foote Armie, whether it be Munition, Victualls, Apparrell or any necessarie thing belonging either to the nourishment of life or the generall defence of the persons; as intrenchments, fortifications places of approach, fallies and all other advantages or difadvantages, which may either be defensive or offensive to his party, or in the like case much auailing or much annoying the enemie; and in any of these defignes where either he shall heare complaint for flacknesse of duty or the performance of true care, he is to call the offenders before him, and to

giuc

give reprehension or punishment by imprisonment, or other defaulttion of pay, as shall seeme best to his discretion; but if the offence h capitall, and of any extreame nature, then he is to referre the partye to a Martiall Court, (which Court he hath power to call at his best pleasure) and there see all Delinquents punished according to the nature of their offences and addition in the transition of the distance of the distance

As thus he hath the generall punishment of crimes, and calling in question of alliniuries within the Foote Armie, fo is he likewise to bee the author of all concord & tranquilline within the circuiers of his com mands, and to that end if any differences or devitions shall fall our betweene any of the great and supreame Officers in the Armie, or between Captaine and Captaine, or Captaine and private Gentleman; whether it concerne place, matter of Honor, viurpation of Office, disobodience, or any other crime; he shall out of his authority (so it bee before the Generall taketh notice thereof) call the parties before him and judicially hearethe whole proceedings; either reconciling and making even the controversie, or else referring it voto the Generall or a Marshall Court according as the nature of the Bulines requireth; Thele are the most materiall things belonging to this great and eminent place which being

honorably purfued, there is no doubt but he shall gaine the loue of all good men, and raife vnto himfelfe pillars of glorious report, which shall keepe his

and was not in the light aname to eternitic, it is a standard of Leimployment, whether it be mareliant, and the Eliston princy belinge of all while of recipies, all which wine the call of according to the

שוויוסים ושישים שם לפסל ביול ישניויי כלה ובינייי כלה ובינייי ביול וויצטיים ובו הוצטיים ובו הוצטיים ובי

This Colonell generalthath the manned Sud gobrennent of all onbque and bringre artifice of the whole Fring on 1903, whether place in Rangille and allipounce of all manner of perfore accor-

and planting citing thehonor and dignitic of places (in

finally united for Skinnishes or other publique encounbefullting to himfelter and grants your them tellelles

when herhales occasion it, and what numbers he holdeth able for the of the of the firmles, It is in his nower to reand project for all the needlary and fit accompdations which be-

Armie, whether it be Municipa, Victualis, Appairbelonging elitier to the nourithment of life de of the perfons or intremendance or fortingerions Method Mother advantages of differentiages

much an alling or much imposing the enemie, and in any of the decrisemance of true call the bedeatt the offenders before him; and to



## TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE ROBERT LORD DORMIN of WING.

### was with or doubt beautiful worth of the land, for he was lonned with the land of the land was lonned with the land of the land with the land of the land of the land was lonned to the land with the land of the land was lonned to the land with the land was lonned to the land with the land was lonned to the land with the land was lonned to the land was lond was lond was lonned to the land was lond was l

## Of the Lieutenant Generall of Horse.

His Discourse (my Lord) which I am enjoyed to tender to your Goodnesse, to your hopes, is but a due Rent belonging to the great place to which God and your Birth hath called you; and therefore I send it for your Reading, for your disposing; yet for the vie of all men, especially those which stand affected to the imitation of noble and most heroicall designes; your Lordship is young, your Lordship.

ship is hopefull: beleeue it, Youth and Hope, or hopefull youth cannot spend houses that are free for Recreation, in a more wholsome or truely delightfull Study: for mine owne part, I can ascribe little merit in the workmanship, it is the matter it selfe which must commend the building. Breuitic I know will a little deface it, for indeed a volume were too scant a Map for so worthy a Subject; but as it is, it must now be your Lordships, yet (for your noble fathers sake, with whom I was much acquainted) believe it, hopefull Sir, no more it, then the Authour which hopes he shall ever love you.

As the Colonell-generall hath a principall and supreame command over all the Infantrie or Foot-companies, disposing and governing them in all proceedings according to the strict rule of true Marshall Discipline: so the Lieutenant-Cenerall of the Horse hath the eminent controll and commandement of all the Cavallerie or Horse-Regiments of what nature or composition socuet.

This great Officer ought to bee (touching the election of his particular person) no lesse then the former great Commaunder of the Foot,

A a that

that is to fay, a noble man both of Blood and Vertue, truely descended from great and Heroicall parents, the memory of whose former actions, may as in a living Chronicle furnive and continue to fucceeding times in the hopes and forward promises of the sonnes most sourishing vertues: neither is this Blood and Vertue to bee vnaccompanied with excellent parts, as Valour, Wisedome, Temperance, and Experience; nay indeed in this mans nature may bee required as much and as many vertues as in the Generall himselfe, onely in the matter of Experience (if Blood, Honour, and the Princes fauour fortifie and give countenance to the commandment) there may be some dispensation: for we have beheld in out ownerimes, not one but divers examples thereof as if we looke but vpon the very first leafe of the History, which speakes the life of the noble Earle of Effex (for in my confcience hee did not imagine hee lived, vntill hee entred into the warres) we shall find that even at his first approch to the warres when he went under the Earle of Leicester into the Low Countreys; he discharged this place with all honour, all admiration. and was without doubt Infinitely worthy of the same, for he was sonne in law to the Generall, highly recommended by the Queenes Maiestie and a man borne of a Millitary, noble and renowned father; and although he were at that time but twenty yeeres of age, yet he was of that Infinite greatnesse of spirit, and had a minde so excellently compounded of all maner of vertuous inclinations, was fo great a louer of Inflice and in him selfe so much bound to the perfections of Temperance and Judgement, that neuer man ruld in a place or came off from a place with more honour and leffe enuic, for he held (as it were) a continual trading with the elder and more experienst Souldiers, framing all his affayres by their aduices; and by his Affabilitie and Bounty (though his effate could never boaft of Infinites) wanne fuch respect and love amongst all men, that nei ther time nor the powerfulnesse of any great wrath, was ever able to find a tombe in which to inclose his memorie; But some will say this press dent is rare and may not inferre an authoritie, but I fay no; for as it, I could recite a world of others did not the breuitie whereunto I amityed restraine me.

But to my purpose, The office of the Lieutenant Generall of the Horses is first respectively as other Captaynes to looke to the happy government of his owne Troupe of horse, and so consequently of his owne regiment: which done he is to have a generall eye of furuay over all other Collegels of horse, their Regiments, Officers and Souldiers, for indeed all are comprised within his charge, neither can any offence or disparagement happen amongst them; which (as a fingar writing vpon a wall) will not point at his difreputation, and therefore not only his eie but the eies of all his Officers and Ministers ought continually to watch and guard ouer all their affayres; preventing (as much as in them lyes) all maner of dilorders, and where the weaker powers are refifted; there to complaine to this eminent and hie officer from whom Justice may be executed (withourrespect) in the highest nature.

The Lieutenant Generall of the horse ought to have delivered vnto him both by the Muster-master Generall and the Collonels and Captaines of the Canallarie two true Rolles or Indentures contaying the Caralogue or lyst of all the Commanders, officers and others whatsoener which doe any way belong to the Canallarie, with the nature and condition of their places, their imployments, Fees and Intertainements, by which he is bounde to doe all men Iustice that are vnder his commande. and to prouide that no exaction or extortion be vied betwixt the rich and poore, the Paymaster and the souldier, the Officer and such as owe vnto him obedience; In briefe any thing that is amiffe within this great Officers commandement, shall by him be sodainely and assuredly amended; and at what time focuer the Colonels shall complayee voto him of wants indured from the superiour Officers, or the Captaines, of wants fustained from the Colonels, meaner officers from the Captaines, or the common Souldier from the Inferior Officers; he shall Instantly bend his eare to fuch complaynts, and if it be within the limitation of his power shall see speedy redresse for the same, If otherwise, he shall then (with all earnestnesse) mediat with the Generall and not leave the pursute : till he fee a reformation or punishment according to the nature of the offence.

It is in the particular power of this Officer onely to diftinguish the seucrall armes and the feuerall Imployments of all the Canallarie disposing the Battalions as shall seeme most convenient in his Judgement; directing who shall be vantcurriers, Scoutes or discouerers, who of the Vangard, who of the Battails, who shall make vo the Wings, and who the Reare: it is he that appointeth the horse Guard for the Lord Marshall the attendance for the Forrage-master and Victualers, what horse shall drawe the Ordinance, what the Wagons, and which beare the Luggage. It is in his power to lay Rates, Taxes and Aseassements upon all Boores and Farmers for all maner of horse prouisions; to give to every Regiment his alowance or proportion of groundsto graze or feede on, and the rates of Hay, Straw and Prouander which they shall receive from the Purueiours or Forrage mafters, at all encampings or other fittings downe of the Armie, whether it bee setled or remoouing, he shall see that the Seriant-Maior and Quarter Master Generall doc allow and lot out a fit and convenient peece of ground, spacious, fit and commodious for the encamping of the Horse quarter, and shall give an especiall charge, that the Regiments be divided equally with very large Streets betweene Regiment and Regiment, that the Companies doe not encroach one vpon another, neither one man deceiue another, but that an equality and indifferency may be vsed on all parts, each taking his true proportion by measure, layd out by the Quarter-Master . And if any question arise which the Colonels, and the Captaines themselves cannot decide, then to appeale to this Officer, and from him to receive order for all reformations.

If any Preyes or Booties of Horses shall be taken from the Enemy, eyther by way of Incursion, surprizing of the Enemies Quarters, gi-

uing Camisades, or by any other Ambuscades. This Officer shall prefently ceaze them by vertue of his place and authority, and those which he shall finde fit for service in the Warres, hee shall distribute into the Regiments for the re-inforcing of their Troopes, and fuch as are not he shall bestowe some vpon the Ordnance, some vpon the Wagons, and

some vpon the Baggadge.

To conclude, as he is the minister of all Equity and Iustice, a faultfinder in all things which are contrary to order : fo must hee bee like. wife a Father of Concord and Amitie amongst his people, sawdering vp all crakes and flawes, which either the tendernesse of Honour shall too quickly finde paynefull, the malice of a foule mouth too rudely prouoke, or the weakenesse of a rashe nature through a false Interpretation seeke to Reuenge. This if he doe he shall give Heanen the Rent it expecteth, and men the Equity they fue for ; He shall be to

the World a patterne of Vertue, and God in requitall will make him a precident of Glery.

applications of the south of th of subortines and the state of the state of

har bird and Charles and nowhead the pointer will be

the his power to lay to the Lake Alectic thinks whomal Books as harmers for all man or of horte receipons on true to curry fteel-

and here of desuper and send and the part of the mine of the design of the send in the send of the sen

O Try may be viction thing to leave the one properties by by our first to the transfer and at any quotient wife to the contract to the transfer to the contract to the transfer to the t

couling Office, and from line to irectine coder for all reforms

son to distance the test of the transfer of the day of the transfer of the contract of the con his in the particular power of this Officer one who a fire for all arms and the level I make many of others of matters to offer

Walker as broad a trackboard she with the restriction and a state of the gase nd in the first of the control of the control

www.meOrdingnce.win the Man pare and which boure the Longage.

her tes of Flov, breavioud II. comble work on they florid receive from the remains of i ortage malters, a lift mean pines of other fixings downer

of the Armit; whether it be netled or subcount, he shall see to a the the standard of the standard of the standard of the and the contaction mosponenicht perce of ground the light of he and consemptions du the

it Region outs be digited equally we have glanged seets between a Kementand Recipent that the Company doeso encoach one voor

any Preyes of Honties of Hork! that betaken from the Lacray.

the formy of Incurion, The practice of the Lannacs Organics, go



## TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE, CHRISTOPHER, LORD ROPER OF

of the Court of T. H. A. H. A. Merson On the Court of

he Teer is change not to come in a second to expedenton Plan OT STATE ARGVMENT.

Of the Treasurer of Warre. ghas bury big bereit due nor any thing before it is due; mould



Efides my Hopes and Defires to raife vnto your Lord-Thip, and all the range or noble Ranke of our English Barrons a Temple wherein your names might bee kept to eternall memorie; I have also found something else to enslame me to the prosecution of this labor, asnamely an Instruction for the weake and Ignorant, and a little fortification vnto ftronger mindes, by calling some things backe vato memory.

which being laid by for some small time, might through forgetfulnesse peraduenture else haue beene hardly reuiued: my hope is your Lordthip shall find nothing empleasant in the Journey of this Epistle but the stile, and that I hope the meaning will excuse, for however I am not an affecter of new phrase (which many couet) yet believe it I am a lover of Truth and plaineneffe, which I know your Lordship will not despife; because it is the best Herauld to display a mans honest actions.

This great Officer (of whom I am now to intreat) ought only to bee chosen by the King, and although Princes doe not ever looke to the Nobilitie of his Blood, yet ought they most precisely to respect the Nobilitie of his minde and naturall inclinations; for the Treasurer of an Armie ought to be a Gentleman, Wife, Frugall, not Couetous, yet rich (and what is almost a miracle) a man of infinite compassion; He must bee Wife both in respect hee is ever of the Privie Councell of the warres, and fo bound to difcerne and looke into all occurents, as also in that he is to indge of the necessities of mens occasions, and ought by

a foreseeing Judgement to know how and in what manner to inlarge Bounties; he must be Frugall because he is trusted with the Kings Treafure (which is the Nerues and Sinewes of the Warres) which by any lauishnes of an open and vnrestrained hand will soone dissipate and confume away without returne of Benefit to the Kings feruice; preferment to him who liveth vpon vnfit Gaines, or Honor to him whose hand was guided with a blind imagination: But if he arrive at the vice of Coue. tousnesse which is the roote of all mischeines; Infinite must the Calamities be which will grow from his Branches, as coofnage in the mulei. plicitie of supposed fees, extortion in loanes before hand, & vnmeasurable vsurie vpon every due summe, contrarie to the very rule of the De. uills prerogative; besides a most generall defrauding of the Prince with falle accounts, vniuft supposed debts, and a world of other desceptions: that he ought to be rich there is nothing more necessary, both because he may be the better able to make account and render farisfaction, (in case the Diuell and Couerousnes drawne him to disorder) as also by his credit and reputation, to bee able to take up and raise new summes, if the Treasure chance not to come in, according to expectation. Now lastly that he ought to be compassionate and full of mercy I appeale to the conscience of every poore Commander and Souldier, who (If hee should out of the cruelty of a currish disposition bind himselfe to pay nothing but that which were due, nor any thing before it is due) would without all question perish sometimes for want of foode, if too greats severity were observed. It is therefore fitthat out of a clement and gen. tle disposition the Treasurer be pittifull to such as want, and notwithstanding they have nothing due at the present, yet to lend a convenient portion, and in the future time to repay himselfe againe; for beleeve it from these small favours at the Treasurers hands doe arise singular good fruits to the Souldiers; as sometimes a prevention of dispaire; a forestalling of Murthers, Thesis and Pillages, a quenching of mutenies, Enuie and repinings, with a world of the like, into which men are apt to imbarque themselues, when they are grownd and gnawne with calamitie and want, and have in them neither patience nor discourse out of which to find any refistance.

The Treasurer must have vnder him many Subtreasurers and inferior Officers, all whichought to be exceeding skilfull in Audit and matter of account; of which some are to keepe a diligent account of his receits & charges where with he may be burdned, & standeth account ant; others of his disbursments & layings out, keeping true bookes of account betweene the vpper Treasurer and all Officers of receits through the whole Armie; having the acquittances of every Regiment by themselves, and taire bookes of record by which to approve every acquittance.

Ouer these Inferior Officers the high Treasurer is with a carefulleic to looke, providing by all meanes that they take not extraordinary sees, or by any artesiciall flatterie or promise of favors; incite free Spirits to inlarge or increase their sees, making the hundred penny (which I know

not by what right the challenge) formetimes fixe pence and sometimes twelve pence more than the true Sum amounts to a for indeed all is extended on at least an ofurier of anonlawifull creation. Besides it is neither lawfull for the high Treasure hundelse more for any of his ministers to Instermeddle with the buying of Captaines account or reckonings, or to take advantage of their prodigalates and lauffit humors of expanse; for it is most certaine that however it make pich Treasure, you will be suer to make miserable Souldiers, for the particular unthristinesse of the Captaine will like a leaprose dispease is selfe and corrupt the blood of the whole company, for it is ordinarily noted in the warres; that the Thristie Captaine hath commonly the warmest clad men, but the Beggerly or Bare Captaine hardly any but a ragged Regiment.

It is a thing most just, honorable and six in Princes to pay duely; for the least failing is a Scourge that whippes forward Inconveniences; and Treasurers in the warres, if they get but the colour of excuse from the Princes forgetfulnesse, know (as the proverbe saith) with a wet singer where to finde Oppression, and then fornicating with that cloud beget practices and cruelties worsethen ten thousand Centaurs.

The Treasurer is to command from the Muster master-generall a perfect List or Rule of all Commanders, Colonels, Captaines and Officers with their foll allowances as they stand rated by the Prince, Generall or Councell of State, together with a certificate of all checks and defalcations; which is both a rule for the Captaine what to receive, and an authority to the Treasurer what to pay; neither is the Treasurer alone to be governed by the certificate of the Muster-master only, but also he is to require the certificates of the Master of the Ordnance, the Victuall-master and Provant-master, that a just and equall due may bee held betweene the Generall and his Souldiers,

It is agained the Office of the Treasurer to receive all Tribuits, Taxes, Tailliages and Impositions which shall be imposed and laid uppon any Citties, Townes or Countries where any Conquest is made or other booty of Treasure is got or to be gotten. It is hee that receiveth all moneyes which the Collegates or assistants in the warres doe contribute, or which

by any other contract is brought into the Armie.

He hath the Superintendancie or overlooking overall Victuallers and Provaunt-masters belonging to the Campe, and to such places whither Treasure cannot with conveniencie be convaid; thither he doth appoint what victuallers shall passe, and with what victuales for the reliefe of Souldiers, till they doe returne where their pay with the defalcations may againe be restored.

To conclude, this eminent and great Officer with his dependants and Subtreasurers, as the Purueyor generall, Victuall-master, Pay master, Clerks and others, ought to bee carefull that contentment bee given from the best to the meanest Creature in the Armie, remembring that the sade of words and Aire are of such crude and hard disgestion, that they are not only dangerous to mans life, but also breed in men such wicked and evill

euili Spirits, that the plague and mortalitie of a confuming Rancor hardly euer after departs from their bolomes. But the worthy and renowned Officer that knowes his true dutie, and doth it, her that feares God, doth the will of his King, and gives comfort to his poore diffressed bretheren; believe it that man whilst hee wanders on the earth, is a favorite in the Court of Heaven, and the King of Kings will tell him,

These that Honor me, I will

[Honor.

to wine Copy and the way his and good in a summer. hiterappearon in the color of the Prince to pay deal of the distent tuting is a scotten state weapp protection to constitute and Tradfacers in the content of each of com the Princes forgetfulor in hiere (as the monetal limb) went wet florer where to finde Oppiellion, and then I watening with that cloud begre practife and crue lich werletten unthousand Cent The Treifferer is to command them the country which will be rever led Lift or Rule of all Communicis, Control cors with their foll ylow andes as hey fond cared by the Prince of the or Councellat bride, together with contrione de all checks and the state of the s one college somether by the certain are at the manier of the tree the Peraller and Protection of the control and equal one out bee see and a second of a property of the Cale It is agained the control of the land of the state of the as a construction that the black of the state of the stat ALB ches a Constitution of the constitution of the little crosses and the

All of the sheet surfaces and surfaces and surfaces are the surfaces

refraction to the contraction of the contraction of



### TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE, ED-WARD LORD NOWEL

Ottorgodier of BROOKE.

riches the state in played in the mate

#### THE ARGVMENT

Of the Master of the Ordnance.

Ans Nature(my Lord) I know is exceeding greedie of Newes and new things, and indeed so violent in that way, that it had rather fame then want, and the force of the object is so great, that whilst it fils the mouthes of many, it possesses the soules of some, and brings admiration to all: this great thing, this gaudie thing, I dare in no wise present to your Honour, for they are but bred of Lies, and fed by

Credulitie, my discourse tends to a clean contrary purpose, it hath Truth to guard it, Experience for warrant, and some Instruction (which cannot bee so called if it want benefit) please then my Lord to read this Epistle (which though it come from him you know not) yet if it shews you any thing worthy knowledge, be afford both he and it will bee ready to ac-

knowledge your Lordship in any other service.

The Master of the Ordnante (which in fome Disciplines is called the Generall of the Artillery) is or should be a person of great Grauitic, Valour, Wisedome and Experience, and indeed a man of noble discent and parentage, being chosen to the place by the Prince himselfe, and seldome by any inferiour Substitute. His Office is a place of great importance, and extendeth it selfe into two maine Branches, the one ener at home, and the other abroad: for as he hath the charge of the Artillery or Manition in the Campe, so hee hath care of all the Forts, Casses, and sortified places which are removed, or lie farre off from the Campe; yet in the guard and respect of that Armie, neither hath he alone the care of their saftic, but also the manner how to keepe them safe, and to that end Bb is to

is to draw fundry circumstances into his consideration, as the situations and strengths of all places whatsoeuer, whether Mediterranell or Maritine, mountainous or plaine, or indeed any or all of these coniouned and mixt together; then what places are strengthened by Nature, and what must bee made strong by Art, the forme of the strength, as being sittest both to defend it selfe, and offend the enemy, the seueral sorts of formes, as whether it be circular, square, or contriued into many angles: and lastly the matter wheron the strength is made, as whether it be Earth, Stone, Bricke, Timber, or any other material and binding substance.

He is also to draw into his consideration the nature and qualitie of all Fortifications, and that they are made and framed as well to withfland the offence of Artillery, as to defend and keepe able themselues by the helpe of Artillery; and for this cause it is most necessary that the Master of the Ordnance bee skilfull in the knowledge of all forts and fizes of great Peeces, as whether they bee Royall (which are the greatest) or vnder Royall (which are the leffer) yet all to be imployed in the matter of Battery. The Royall are those which we call the Culuerin, the Quarter Cannon, the Demy cannon, the Cannon, the Double cannon, the Cannon-Pedera, the Basilisco, and indeed any peece which shooteth a Bullet from seauenteene pounds weight or vpwards : and the Vnder-royall are the Demy culurin, the Saker, the Minion, the Falcon, the Falconet, the Rabinet, the Harquebuffe a Crock, and indeed any peece which shouteth a Bullet from feuenteene pound weight downewards, and this Ordnance is the Mafter not onely by his authoritie and potents to prouide and raife, either by purchase, prize, or casting, as the abilitie of the place where hee resideth will affoard, but also to see them mounted either upon Carriages for the field, vpon Bulwarks, Forts, Castels, Towne-wals, or any other place of defence or offence, as shall appeare best in his judgement: and to this end he shall be of appropued judgement in all manner of Fortifications, and able to direct the inferior Officers under him (as the Lieutenant of the Ordnance, the Engine master, the Trench-master, Captaine of the Pioners, and the like) in the framing of Bulwarks, Curtaines, Canaleros, Tenalas, Tizeras, Dientes, Cafamats, Teraplenes, Trenches, Ditches, or any thing belonging to their owne safetie, or the enemies annoyance; as also how to refortifie any place that is decayed, or in the first erection by ill directions hath been made contrary to Art, whereby the platforme is to bee new moulded and reformed: and herein he ought to be capable of differning (vpon a scrious view) any hindrance and annoyance whatsoeuer, which shall accompany his worke, as whether it be without the situation of the worke, as if there bee hills, plaines, rivers, lakes, valleys, rockes, woods, vineyards, orchards, gardens, monafteries, old Churches, or any other Edifices, Seas, Isles, Bayes, or the like, or elfe within the fituation, having regard to the wall, and every quality thereof, the height and thicknesse of the Terraplene, the strength of the Gates, the depth of the Ditches, whether wet or drie, how waters are conuaid into it, whether by open and naturall channels, or by close and secret Conduits, the altitude of the place,

place, as whether it be aboue or below other buildings that are about it, with a world of other observations; all which if they breed any annoyance or inconvenience he shall be able immediatly to reforme and cures making the place fafe and ftrong, howfocuer Nature hath promifed the contrary; and in this worke hee shall have great care to husband every thing as frugally as is possible, & to be respective over the Princes purse. vling Stone where stone is plentifull, Bricke, where Bricke is made, and Timber, where Timber groweth; and where any of these are wanting to vie either strong Turfe or Earth, or any other matter which the

place affoordeth.

As thus the Master of the Ordnante hath these Commandemements in remote, forraine and out places : To hath he in the Campe as eminent and great controlments; for there the generall charge of the whole Artilery dependeth vpon him and his necessary substitutes, of which the principall are the Lieutenant, the Clerke of the Ordnance, the Pay-master, the Purueyor Generall, foure Scribes, foure Stewards, an Harbenger, a Chancellour, divers Interpreters, a Preacher, a Physition, a Surgeon, a Trumpet, all Enginers and Refiners, and a Guard both of Foot and Horse, Gentlemen and Halberdiers, and ouer all these seuerall places (of the most materiall whereof I have already written) he is the chiefe Superintendant, and hath the power to dispose of all things according to his pleasure and Iudgement, as also hee hath the commaund, choise and controllment of all Gunners and Cannoniers whatfoeuer, and both giveth vnto them their feuerall allowances, and doth allot them their feuerall attendants.

It is also in the power of the Master of the Ordnance to prease and haue vnder him both Ship-wrights, Boat-wrights, and other necessarie Carpenters, who at his appoyntment shall frame Boates, Barges, and other Vessels, which may bee portable, and at pleasure taken in sunder and toyned, for the transportation and carriage of the Army ouer any great rivers, or small armes of the Sea, by fastning those Boats together, and making Briges thereof strongly boarded & planckt, and well rayled on either side, as hath been done in divers forraine Armies, and also with vs here at home in the yeare Eightie eight, when the Armie & prouisions were passed ouer the Thames betweene Kent and Essex: so that of these Boats for Bridges should never be in the Army vnder the number of fortie at the least, ouer which charge (vnder the Master of the Ordnance) should be a Captain of the Boats, two Ship-wrights, a Master-Carpenter to planke them, twentie Saylers and Calkers, a Guard of Horsemen to conduct them, two Smiths and their men to have charge of the Ironworks, a Master of the Cables, Anchors, and Graplings, a Wheel-wright and certaine Carters to drive the Carriage.

The Mafter of the Ordnance appointeth under his hand-writing the numbers and proportions of all maner of prouisions of Munition which shall attend the Armie, and delivereth it to the Lieutenant, the Lieutenant feeth them prouided, and distributed to the inferiour Officers, and the inferiour Bb 2

Vnderthe command of the Master of the Ordnance, is the Cariage mafter, the Clerke of the Cariages, the Harbenger, the Steward, the Gilmafter, a Pronost, two Carpenters, two Farriers, and all the Carters, Horfe, Oxen. and all that draw any kind of Munition; and he or his inferiour Officers doc not onely proportion out what weight every Cariage shall draw, but also what number of cattell shall bee in every draught, according to the weight with which they are laden; as to draw a Cannon, thirtie beafts; a Demy-cannon, twenty beafts; a Culuerin, foure and twentie beaftes; a Saker twelve beafts, and so of the restanswerable to their bignesse, eight beafts in Cart with two wheeles will draw twentie hundred weight; in a Waggon with foure wheeles, thirtie or fortie hundred weight; and fo likewile answerable to the same proportions: and to the Carriages the Master of the Ordnance shall allow a competent number of attendants, to lade and vnlade the Carriages: and last of all, shall see that a reuerend and good order be kept, both in the prouision, keeping, and dispofing of all things whatfocuer hath beene already rehearfed; fo shall

188

he crowne himselfe with all the glories which are due to his place, and make the truth of his renowne a large and easie Staire by which to climbe to the

thod bus a supply highest advancement.

to the control of the powers of the control of the

ander I in hot. Still w at a A Date wights and mice needlede

who at his approved the figure Boards, Banges, and

me uses the relief the wall of the season of the season of the

A love dely the rest of the property of the Arry order any order are continued as the property of the property of



DIGBY Lord of SHERBORNE

Vice-chamberlaine to his maiestie,
and one of his most Honourable
Priny-Councell:

auson an exposit in The ARGVMENT.

names which he mierb in his come position or perion, neither froil be

Of the Lord Marshall.

Here be two things (most noble Lord) which aboue all others doe most weaken and distracte the Sense of the painefulest writer, that is a Serious and deepe Subject, and a learned and well Judging Eare, at both which I am arrived in this Epistle; for the matter being Warre however neglected by Ignorance, yet amongst the best knowledges hath beene of facred estimation; and your noble Eare

(to whom I consecrate these much vnpolisht and Rude gatherings) hath so longe beene sed with all the excellencies which Art is able (in his best Trimme) either to inuent or adorne: that there is nothing can possibly proceed from me (if it have any good Season) which hath not long before beene more gloriously lodged in your owne most Noble Experience; Blame me not then (honord Sir,) if I a little shake in this Dedication, having mine owne wants to leade me, and your vertues to amaze me, the action may very well become my feare, yet if (out of your greater goodnesse) you shall be pleased to give strength to mine attempt, I doubt not but that courage shall awaken in me some new industrie which may prove worthy both of your view and Studie.

The Lord Marshall of an Armie aboue all other Officers ought to be a most approued Souldier, for howsoever in the greatnesse of other great places in the warres; there may be a dispensation of skill; Countenance and Vertue being as requisite as Knowledge & Iudgement, yet in this Office it may not be so, for this man aboue all others hath the greatest

greatest place of action and direction in all the Armie, and howsoeuer he hath more to command then any, yet all they have no power to dispense or lessen the least dutie belonging to his person, for howsoeuer the Generall or Livetenant-Generall may precede him in place, yet they ought not in knowledge, since both themselves and the whole Armie, both Horse and Foote are bound to move only by his direction; and though to the Generall (who is his Commander) hee may not say this or that you must doe, yet he may say here and in this place your Honor ought to stand; and therefore what manner of man this great person ought to be, for Wisdome, Temperance, Valour and Vertue, every one is better able to discribe and Judge; then to finde out a person sutable to the

imployment.

Next the Generall the Lord Marshall hath the supreame command of the whole Field, and therefore his Trumper is first in the morning to discharge the Watch, and his Troope ought first of all to bee mounted: for it is an honor which the Armie alloweth him by reason of the infinit paines which he taketh in his owne perticuler person, neither shall his Troope Watch or Ward but are discharged of that duty by reason of their other more serious occasions. After He and his Troope are mounted, he marcheth to the ourmost borders of the Campe and there makes a stanst till the whole Armie be Ranged, neither quits his place till the last man be on foote; He is himselfe in all things both assistant and directive to the Generall of the Horse and the Serieant-Maior. All the day longe he is tied to no Battalion, but at his owne pleafure may bestow his owne person; sometimes accompaning the Generall, sometimes leading his owne Troope, and indeed alwayes where the greatest occafion of necessity is and where the enemie is most likely to assaile and aduenture, for his place is most honorable and where honor is, there should behis residence. As his person, so his Troope also is not tied to any especiall or certaine place, but may varie and alter as danger and honor shall give occasion, still supplying what soeuer is weakest, and as a prepared Champion must continually beeready to entertaine the enemie vpon all his approaches, & at night vpon retraits; the Reare is his place and he bringeth it vp with courage and fafetie; then being come to the Campe he stayeth till euery man be dismounted and the whole Armie lodged, and then he with his Troope dismounteth; he taketh oder for the Scours, aduiseth with the Sericant Major for the Guards, vieweth the strengths of the Campe and seeth there be no decay in the ditches or entrenchments.

The Lord Marshall is the supreame and only powerfull Judge in all causes of Life and Death, in criminals offences and controversies of all manner of natures, and provide the for the due execution of all the Lawes, Bandos, Articles and Institutions which shall be appointed by the Generall to be observed and to see due punishment executed for any breach of the same; whence it proceeds that he ought to be exceeding well read and learned in all Marshall Lawes, the customes of Countries,

rhe

the degrees of Honor and the distributions of Bloods, places and imployments; and that he may the better proceed in these affaires; he is to bee affished with divers learned and experienc't Officers under him; as the Iudge-Marshall and Provost-Marshall (of whose Offices I have already written,) an Auditor and two Clerkes, the under Provosts, Gaoylers and Executioners, Corigidors or Beadles to punnish the Infragantie or unruly; and twenty or thirty Gentlemen for a continual Guard about him! The Iudge-Marshall is to affish him in all difficult & curious interpretations of the lawes, and in deciding such controversies as shall happen in the taking of prisoners, in the slying of Colours, and in sitting in Marshall Courts according to the dignity of places; he is to direct the Scont-Master in all his proceeding and to receive from him all the Intelligences and observations which he hath sound out in his discoveries, and to deliver unto him any other instructions which had formerly beene neglicated.

It is the Office of the Lord Marshall to give order to the Master of the Ordnance both for his march and for his passage, both where, when and which way all his provisions shall goe for the best advantage and safetie, and at the planting of Arrillerie or making of Batteries, the Marshall is to overfee the proceedings, and to give directions upon any doubt or misadventure; he is to give order unto the Victuall-master, Waggon-master and all Officers of their natures, both for their allodgments, Stores and all other necessarie accommodations; and against all violences or injuries which shall bee offerd them, here is to see a carefull

and speedy Reformation.

When the Armie is to bee incamped in any new place, the Sericantmaior-generall, the Quarter-master-generall, the Sericant-maiors of Regiments, the Scont-master, and all inferior Quarter-masters (with a sufficient Guard of the best Horsemen) are to attend him, and hee out of
his owne power with the modest aduise of the Sericant-maior-generall,
the Quarter-master-generall, and the Scont-master generall shall assign the
place wherein the Campe shall be pitched, the manner, torme and proportion it shall carry, the bounds it shall containe, and the distinction
of enery place and commoditie, aduantage, strength or discommoditie,
which it shall please him to annexe vnto the same; and according to his
pleasure and demonstration, so shall the Quarter-master-general see it
devided, leaving the intrenchment to the Trench-master, and the other
Inferior devisions to the Sericant-maior-general, the Sericant-maiors of
Regiments and to their Quarter-masters.

It is in the power of his Office also (after the Armie is incamped) hauing taken a view of all the Posts and Guards of the Campe, to appoint all the Regiments, in what manner they shall place their Corps de Guards, the Scouts & Sentinels, so as no man may passe either in or out; but to be continually upon their discouery, and likewise to prouide for all other Reparations, Fortifications and Srengths which are to be made for the safetie of the whole Armie. And as thus in the constant settling of the Armie.

Armie, fo in the Marching and remouing thereof, the Lord Marshall is to have an especiall regard to his strength and abilitie to encounter with the Enemie, & whether it be meete to enter into the face of Battell or no, or whether the times be ripe for matters of execution or elle to decerre and keepe of all occasions of encounters; In which if he find himselfe the weaker; Hee shall then order his Marches through Rockie Mountanous, and as ill accessible places as he can finde out, thereby to adde a naturall strength to his Armie so as the Enemie may in no wife affault him, and fill to have the lighter fort of Horsemen to March so neare vnto the Enemie that continually vpon every alteration hee may have a speedy notice of any particuler preparation; but if the necessitie of the march be through Champains & Plaines where the nature of the ground affoardeth no affiftance, then the Lord Marshall must by all politique deuises make his Caualrie or Horse Armie, appeare so great and innumerable as is possible, which (being the greatest executioners in fuch Victories) will not a little amaze and diffract the Enemie in his ap. proaches; and so of the contrary part reputing himselfe the stronger. he is to observe all advantages, and by the discoverie of his Scouts to take oportunitie and to charge at the best advantage.

Lastly, as in Encamping and Marching, so he is to hold especiall regards in the removing of the Campe, whether it be by night or day, In which as the day remove is audacious and bold without any respect of ceremonie; so must the night Remove be full of Policie, Silence and great Diligence, and the march or good array to be held with all care and Industry, for this manner of Remove is but one haire difference from slight, and therefore it requireth all the skill and art of the Marshall, and all the care and obedience that can be required in the Souldier; for it is a Rule in Martiall Discipline, that no Remove by night can be absolutely secure, and then being done without securitie it must needs Insertence slitie, and that necessitie requireth all the strength which can be

comprehended either in Art or Valour.

and abadice of animal westign

Arta smiled wildered safe or to be a tell or

Into a world of other accourrens I could runne in this volimited Office, but I imagine I have already rouched the most materiall, and therefore he that shall applie the strength of his endeauours to performe as much as is already delivered, though he cannot assence to the highest

Spheare ineuery curious apprehension (yet beleeue it) he shall rest in such an excellent middle (which indeed is the best) path, that none can or shall receive more scornethen those which dare to be his Scorners.

or Se Seminario Color of all and a virtue Se to



### OmenoTHE ROLGHOT HONORABLE, FVLKE GREVILE LORD BROOKE

Chancellor of his Maiesti's Court of

Exchequer, and of his maieflies most om all the commoson or etiste houourable Prinie Councell. To a the good inslored date a place of fireh angular expedictions of process fireheard greater Dig :

Army and a great Sould from My of A H Toment of all Souldiers, and in the chiefe of the Central a man to versity without limit, that Of the Lieutenant Generallo de conocias



Fter folong a progresse (my Lord) as I have held in these Discourses (of the nature of the Warres) no maruell though my minde bee taken vp with Wearineffe, with Dulneffe. but the first is an offence, and I ought not to entertaine it, the latter is a benefit, and fo agreeing with my nature, that I fee not how I can refuse it : for howsoener we call it a Difeale, yet I find it still taketh vp its lodging in

a retired Imagination, where vanities are expulst, or at least contemned. If therefore that follid humour shall take any thing from the cheerefulnesse which I ought to expresse in these substantial and high places, be your Lordship pleased to conceine, it is no fencelesse drowfinesse, but rather a painfulneffe in my nature, which though I cannot enery way refift, yet I will strine as much as I can to adorne, both to give your Lord ship, and also the world that debt of contentment which I know I am owing.

This high place of which I am to entreat, being the of Lieutenant-Generall, is diucrily understood, as when an absolute Generall (fent by a Prince) daubing Ambition, is intituled but a Lieutenant General, although he have the full power of an absolute Generall: and the other is when a Generals Lieutenant in the presence of the Generall, standeth as his fecond in all Powers and Authorities whatfoeuer: but this is not in all Armies, nor all Disciplines, but either in the presence of an absolute Prince, who for the ease of his affaires and designes, appoints a Lieute-

Cc

nant; or when some Nobleman of high Ranke and Qualitie (elected to a place of this eminence) being either of young yeares, or little practife in the warres, a meaner man, more appropued and exquifite in the knowledge of those affaires, is nominated and made his Lieutenant: or where many Noble personages doe desire Imployment, to saue the increase of Officers which may draw an increase of charge, a Lieutenant generall may well be appointed : or lastly, where two Nations joyne in an equall charge, for the dispatch of a resolucd Warre, there the one may nominer one great Officer, & the other another; as it fell out in our remembrance when Oveenc ELIZABETH giving and to the States of the Low countries : by agreement she nominated the Earle of Leicester for General, and the States nominated the Count Hollack for Lieutenant-generall, and fo of all the other great and supreme Officers: but according to the manner of the most ancient discipline, it hath ever beene held a place vnnecessary. and for the most part omitted : yet not withstanding when such a man is chosen, he ought to be a man of fingular vertue, whereby to accommodate a place of fuch fingular expectation; of great Birth, and greater Digmitie, having power to command all the great and mightie persons of the Army; and a great Souldier, having the commandement of all Souldiers, and in the absence of the Generall a man so veterly without limit, that he is not to acknowledge any Superiour.

This man, howfoeuer the Generall hath a great power in his nomination, yet his election ought to be from the Prince himselfe, with the aduice of his Councell of State: for as he is a yoke-fellow and companion with the Generall, so he is the servant of his Country, and when they are poiz'd together, the greater dutic must rob him of the much lester observation: wherefore it is requisite this man be excellent and accomplish in every perfection what socuer, as that of Religion, Wisedome, Experience, Policy, Gravitie, Secresie, Counsell, Modestie, Temperance, Valour, Magnanimitie, Care, Vigilance, Constancie, Liberality, and Resolution: for if but any one of these have a withered lease, however the Tree may sourch, yet still there will bee in every constant Gazer some one or other marke

of Imputation.

The most materiall parts of his Office consisteth in Counsels, and the debatements of all serious designes, when they are judicially cald vpon, and so argued to the vettermost benefit and strength of the Army, as also in vettering (to the Armie) all the directions and commandements which at any time proceed from the Generall; for in truth the substance of his place cannot be intituled by any more worthy name, then to be called the Eccho or voice of the Generall; for he is to all the great Officers of the Armie the Interpreter of what socuer the Generall intendeth, and therfore it is exceeding necessary that he which commandeth in so high a place, should be as highly renowned for all high and excellent vertues, which may adorne either his mind or knowledge, and bee (as it were) a Lanthorne or bright lampe, by which cuery man might have a cleare and shining Light, to guide and direct him in the swift Race and

Cariere to all Noble and Praise-worthie Attehicuements. In this man's power(under the fufferage of the Generall) is the election of many Captaines, and other great places, which according to the fingularitie of his owne Goodnesse will ever bee more singular and profitable both for the Prince and Armie; for a good man will ener studie to abound in good men, when the cuill and vicious strive still to bee attended by men of their owne nature and disposition; and the good Cap. taine bringeth forth the good Souldier, but the good Souldier, the noble happy, and famous actions. These premises duly considered, it beloo. ueth this our Lieutenant Generall for his experience and inward knowledge to be no Scholler, but a Master in the Art of Warre, to be redoubted and valiant in the extremitie of all Attempts, yet without Furie or Rashnesse; to be full of grave and admired authoritie, by which the very glimple or shadow of his countenance may bee able to strike an awefull reverence into the hearts and mindes of all that shall behold him : and lastly, he must be the delight and fauourite of Fortune, that all the actions and attempts which he shall take in hand, may concurre and follow with all bleffed fuccesse, and most happy proceedings: for thus the old Romans chose still their Lieutenants, and thus they went foorth armed with great experience; and thus they ever returned home adorned with stately and famous Triumphs.

Againe, in this man these excellencies are to be required more then in any other: for be he of which sort of Lieutenants (absolute) a man shall please to elect, yet on him the greatest burthen of affaires must ener depend: for notwithstanding Kings and Princes are commonly pleased to be present with their Armies themselues in person, yet if they have not that large benefit of Experience which is requisite in such needfull and potent occasions, yet carrying with them Lieutenants-Generals of grave, ancient, and renowned experience, who as true servants to their King, and kind Fathers to their Countries, are able to manage and passe through all the doubtfull encounters depending upon the Warres, there is no feare but all things will succeed well, and the temper of his sound and more abler sudgement will bring to his Countrey many samous and happy Conquests, and to his King a new name of power and authoritie, by which hee shall be admired and seared of all Nations, and all people,

which dare to oppose or trie the effects of his Fortunes.

This Lieutenant-general of ours, as hee must have true Magnahimitie and Martiall valour, carefully respecting every Action belonging to the warres, so he is to have also a singular industrie to put every thing in practise, and an agile and quicke readinesse, prompt to essect and bring every thing to passe; besides a Constancy and true Fortitude of minde to passe through all hazardous dangers, and by the discourse of Reason to lay even and smooth those rough and thornic wayes, which either strive to interpose his designes, or else as it were (against all likelihood) to thrust in and stand prepared (with the Bug-beare shaddow of a little oddes) to justle or throw downe his Fortunes; and hence it is necessary that this

GC 2

great

196

## TA bo To Have and Rolling Con To The Total Con Total HONOVRABLE EDVVARD LORD

的位置的现在分词是现代现代的对象的

which holders depending on wo A T W OM is his owner and people, to actend his Right House Boels; intruding leithers to value full Vierpers, then the Here's apparent when all blace Kings as

# the file of Spains, or the free a my b RA affer als made by abfoluse Princes, as the Duke of Eurguner, and Garfe in France, Pembrokellarand General there are also a divers kinder, grounding the grounds

Tfalls our many times (my Lord) that the minde like a couragious Hauke (which plies her wings & labours to get vp high into the Aire) if ftill it be operlaid with its owne toile, mult of necessitie in the end either flag her wings or stoope to a faulfe prey, not being able to doe any thinge because it hath done too much, for too prodigall an expence of Spirits makes the minde heartleffe; Nay fome!T

have knowne of that weakenesse of temper, that but to thinke of that which they must doe, hath taken away all abilitie to doe what they should; But of these infirmities I hope your Lordship shall acquir me, for as a chearefull hope was the first Author of mine undertakings, for heare an affured comfort in your noble acceptance (to whole Blood and Houle I must ever acknowledge a particuler debt of service) I doubt not but will fixe a worthy Seale to the end of my labors; I know many might have done this worke fooner, better, but fince they are pleafed to fit with foulded vp aimes and only studdle how to be rid of Time, let it not be imputed to me error or arrogance that I have writ my knowledge, for though it adde nothing to a full growne strength, yet I doubt not but it may give nourishment to the young and fickly.

Being come to the last Confines of this Militarie discourse, I am in this place to handle the particuler duties and vertues of anablolute Generall or the only one great and enrier Commander over an Armie Royall, wherein is to be understood that the name or title of Generall (as it is respectively in it selfe) is to be taken divers and fundry wates, for some are absolute and without seconds, as were the source principall monarches of the world, to wit, the Affirrian, the Perfian, the Grevian and the

Roman :

Roman, some not altogether so absolute, yet depending vpon one and the same authoritie; as for example, Julius Cefar who notwithstanding he was but at first a semant to the Seuant, yet aspiring to the height of his ambition, the greatest stile that hee affected was but to be Imperator (which fignifieth a Generall) and the most glorious Title (atthis day which any Prince can attaine is but Generall, yet this great Diamond is still more Glorious and Sparkling, according to the Wealth and Arte in the setting; for an absolute Soueraigne being made Generall over many Princes and many Nations, and going to a holy Warre against the enemies of God and finceare Religion, he is esteemed the best and most renowned Generall of all others; Next him is the absolute King which holdeth dependance on none, but leadeth forth his owne Battels and people, to defend his Rights against Rebels; Intruding Injurers or vnlawfull Vsurpers, then the Heires apparent vnto absolute Kings, as our Blacke Prince, Philip Dolphin of France, and Philip sonne to Charles the fift of Spaine, or the like; and laftly lawfull Generals made by absolute Princes, as the Duke of Austria in Spaine, the Dukes of Burgundy and Guyfe in France, Pembroke, Suffex, Leitefter, and Efex in England; and of these Generals there are also a divers kinde, grounding the greatnes of their places from the greatnesse of their Commissions; being Stiled some by the name of Generals (as our Leicefter was in the Low-Countries) some Linetenants without the addition of Generall (as the Earle of Effex was in Ireland) and some Linetenant-Generals as the Earle of Ormund was in the same Kingdome, the Lord Grey and divers others, for it is a Rule amongst Princes to qualifie these Titles according as either Facions or lealoufies shal guid them: nay, sometimes to loyne two Generals in one Commission, as Norris & Drake into Porsinguit, and the Earle of Effex and the Earle of Nettingham into Spaine.

For the vertues which are to be acquired in the brest of this volimited Commander, however some would seeke to bring them into a proportionable number, yet I affirme that questionlesse he ought to have All without limitation, no vertue excepted, and the vices which hee mult shunne, should likewise be All, and no vice accepted; this is hee which ought to be loued and obeyed at home, and redoubted and admired abroad: He ought to gouerne the courages of the greatest, and the wills of the meanest. In matters that are declyning and desperar, his conflancy ought to be Inuincible, and his valour fo firme that with amazement, hee might stricke dead the hearts of his enemies, and make the very weapons drop out of the hand of the most resolved opposers: it is he that ought to be the darling of Fortune, and to whom Chance should offer as a Sacrifice both Townes, Castles, and Prouinces, as if they had beene taken in Nettes and throwne at his feete as lawfull Tributs, and yet not to imagine that this Body yeelded a greater shaddow after, then before his Victories, he must not robbe the Gods of their heads, to fixe them on his owne Statues, but like the Sunne, thine indifferently to all men, only appeare terrible and scortch the proud, rash and ouer curious

Gazers; his Inclination as it must only bend to Armes, yet it must not looke awry from learning : he must mure his body to trauell, and feede his mind with paine & pleafure at one inflant, & howfocuer Forme at a ny cime shall dart aduerse accidents against him, yet must his resolution maintaine foffrong a Guard about him, that the may confesse his fortie greater then her violence, and his Wisdome beyond the Stratagems of her leuearest designes; he must have Wildome to maintaine the Flowie of his vertue that ir wither not before it have brought forth the expected fruits, and Care to keepe that oline branch ever greene which he shall purchase with the price of Blood, hazard of his lite, and the losse of the goodlieft and most flourishing yeares of his age the ought to bee a Danid in valour, a Solomon in wisdome, and an Ezekias in zeale, making the world know what a great Judgement can doe in a great Fortune, a great modestie in a great power, and a victorious arme in a renowned Triumph. To be briefe, this Generall is he, which oughero be a Godly man, a Good man, Great, Mercifull, Wife, Happy, molt Honord, and most Worthy, which howfocuer fome may imagine to be a man food ner found in Europia, then any of our owne discouered Kingdomes, yet doubtleffe many fuch there are, and at least to neare as cambe, fuelt a man for this place ought ever to be elected. 22st uns beadroi blod a driw mid

Touching the power of his Commandment, let it fuffice the briefely to fay that as he commands all; fo the commandments which belong vnto all, are truely his, and he vnto the whole Armie must be the cheite and principall Mooner. Touching his Skill and Gouerment, in direction, in preuention, and in Marshall Discipline, it ought to be so Illustrate and Shining, and so able to inchant with the telicities of his Fortunes, that not only his owne people, but all that farre or neere flood to gaze on his proceedings (how enerthe wind blow vncertainly or his course seeme doubtfull) yet with all willingnesse might be proud to Imbarque themselues in that vessell, whose Pilot in governing the Helme was so aboue wonder, that even the Seas (as a second Neptune) seeme cuer to obey him. And hence it appeares that hee ought to bee a Souldier even from his Cradle, running through, or ar least respecting every place and distinction in Office from the lowest Sentinell, to the last great place of his present abiding, and that not in one kind, but in both also, Horse and Foote, making vp (as ir were) one finguler Arte with both their perfections, and coupling together every Nerue lo with Studie and Obserparion, that all things may appeare easie and within the levell of his Conquest; to this end his power must be absolute and vnrestrained, that flying with vnpinion'd wings it may seeme to be hid within the Skie of the greatest Actions: In which way nothing can prosper him so much as Pietie and Religion, for fearing God, it will not only pull vpon him a bleffing, but administer to his people noble examples.

His Birth (however Plato be differing in opinion, fearing least the egard of Blood should drownd the regard of vertue) ought to be Noble, for the great Spirit neuer declines but when it turnes backe on perfecution,

fection, it is they and only they which climbe by fure or fafe Stayres. Lower Fortunes when they rife commonly either Iumpe and bound vi too fuddenly, or stride and climbe so vnaduisedly, that danger tripping at their heeles, shame often thrustes them downe with a thousand dign ces, but if they get up by a true and direct way, then they ennoble them selves: nor doth Honor Jose any grace when hee placeth Merit about him. This Officer would be of ripe and understanding yeares, for youth is traueling, but hath not attained to the journey of experience, and age (how able soeuer it compound the minde) yet it still must lodge in a Weake and Imporent body. His features and proportion ought to bee comely and delightfull, for models are better and with more delight taken from faire Structures, then Ruinous buildings; and his Speach would be gracefull, pleasant and succine't, for in the warres it is a vertuous charme, and accounted the most wholesomest Inchantment.

To conclude, he ought to have a principall regard of his owne safetie; for Generals when too freely they thrust themselues into dangers, are not carelescof their owne but of the health of the Armie, and the trefpasse is made against the publique, when any rashnesse hales the private into danger; let him therefore only outbrave danger not wood it, let him with a bold forhead and face fired with Courage, a heart discreete.

and a minde that can preuent what Fortune dare to threaten, not run into, but refift hazards; fo shall he excell in good Fortunes and the world shall confesse that nothing he attempts, but is affifted with Glory, Grabette, Judgement and Bouldneffe. and to able to inchant Withhelp telles is of has formore that

The end of the fift and last Decad.

ver with all willing nelle highs be eroud so I missraued

ot only his owne possibly her all of the armone thoo I to ease on his

Chaw endribe wind blow voces carsly or his conflicterace

this power mad beat slave and varefrained

Acuonal fowlight west nothing camprotection to mich is light to teating God, it will not enty pull your lain a

administration of people or annules.

His Birth (however the be diffing in opinion, arring leaft of selection algeo (surport in prepared by regard of vertue) on the collection of th e, for the great Source nepart declines in which practice protect our

wines it may feemen be hid will in one Stre



